

# ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps

## User's Manual

---

### Overview

Describes the features and development environment.

### Sample Program

Describes how to use the sample program.

### Programming Guide

Describes how to write programs in application development.

### API Reference

Describes the APIs provided in ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps.

### Command Transmission/Reception

Describes the APIs for transmitting and receiving commands.

### Appendix

Describes the specifications for printers used for the ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps.

## Cautions

- No part of this document may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Seiko Epson Corporation.
- The contents of this document are subject to change without notice. Please contact us for the latest information.
- While every precaution has taken in the preparation of this document, Seiko Epson Corporation assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions.
- Neither is any liability assumed for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.
- Neither Seiko Epson Corporation nor its affiliates shall be liable to the purchaser of this product or third parties for damages, losses, costs, or expenses incurred by the purchaser or third parties as a result of: accident, misuse, or abuse of this product or unauthorized modifications, repairs, or alterations to this product, or (excluding the U.S.) failure to strictly comply with Seiko Epson Corporation's operating and maintenance instructions.
- Seiko Epson Corporation shall not be liable against any damages or problems arising from the use of any options or any consumable products other than those designated as Original Epson Products or Epson Approved Products by Seiko Epson Corporation.

## Trademarks

EPSON is a registered trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation.

Exceed Your Vision and ESC/POS are registered trademarks or trademarks of Seiko Epson Corporation.

Microsoft®, Windows®, Visual Studio®, Visual C#®, and Visual Basic® are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

Wi-Fi® is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance®.

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Seiko Epson Corporation is under license.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners and used for identification purpose only.

## ESC/POS® Command System

EPSON ESC/POS is a proprietary POS printer command system that includes patented or patent-pending commands.

ESC/POS is compatible with most EPSON POS printers and displays.



ESC/POS is designed to reduce the processing load on the host computer in POS environments. It comprises a set of highly functional and efficient commands and also offers the flexibility to easily make future upgrades.

© Seiko Epson Corporation 2014-2015. All rights reserved.

## For Safety

### Key to Symbols

The symbols in this manual are identified by their level of importance, as defined below. Read the following carefully before handling the product.

|   |  |
|---|--|
|  | Provides information that must be observed to avoid damage to your equipment or a malfunction. |
|  | Provides important information and useful tips.  |

## Restriction of Use

When this product is used for applications requiring high reliability/safety such as transportation devices related to aviation, rail, marine, automotive etc.; disaster prevention devices; various safety devices etc; or functional/precision devices etc, you should use this product only after giving consideration to including fail-safes and redundancies into your design to maintain safety and total system reliability. Because this product was not intended for use in applications requiring extremely high reliability/safety such as aerospace equipment, main communication equipment, nuclear power control equipment, or medical equipment related to direct medical care etc, please make your own judgment on this product's suitability after a full evaluation.

# About this Manual

## Aim of the Manual

This manual aims to provide development engineers with all the information necessary for the construction and design of a printing system that uses ePOS-Print SDK, and for the development and design of printer applications.

## Manual Content

The manual is made up of the following sections:

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| Chapter 1 | <a href="#">Overview</a>                       |
| Chapter 2 | <a href="#">Sample Program</a>                 |
| Chapter 3 | <a href="#">Programming Guide</a>              |
| Chapter 4 | <a href="#">API Reference</a>                  |
| Chapter 5 | <a href="#">Command Transmission/Reception</a> |
| Appendix  | <a href="#">Support Information by Printer</a> |
|           | <a href="#">Cautions</a>                       |

# Contents

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| ■ For Safety .....         | 3 |
| Key to Symbols .....       | 3 |
| ■ Restriction of Use ..... | 3 |
| ■ About this Manual .....  | 4 |
| Aim of the Manual .....    | 4 |
| Manual Content .....       | 4 |
| ■ Contents .....           | 5 |

---

## Overview ..... 9

|                                    |    |
|------------------------------------|----|
| ■ Overview of ePOS-Print SDK ..... | 9  |
| Features .....                     | 9  |
| Function .....                     | 10 |
| ■ Operating Environment .....      | 11 |
| OS .....                           | 11 |
| Printer .....                      | 12 |
| Development Environment .....      | 13 |
| ■ Contents in the Package .....    | 14 |
| Package .....                      | 14 |
| Manual .....                       | 14 |
| Sample Program .....               | 14 |
| Download .....                     | 14 |
| ■ Restrictions .....               | 15 |

---

## Sample Program ..... 17

|   |    |
|---|----|
| ■ Functionality .....                   | 17 |
| ■ Usage Environment .....               | 18 |
| Development Environment .....           | 18 |
| Printer .....                           | 18 |
| Target device .....                     | 18 |
| ■ Environmental Construction .....      | 19 |
| ■ How to Use the Program Sample .....   | 21 |
| Search for printers and printing .....  | 21 |
| Acquisition of Printer Model Name ..... | 28 |
| Sample receipt data Printing .....      | 29 |

---

## Programming Guide ..... 31

|  |    |
|--|----|
| ■ How to Incorporate the ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps ..... | 31 |
| ■ ePOS-Print SDK .....   | 33 |
| Print Mode .....   | 33 |

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| Programming Flow .....                                 | 33        |
| Printer Selection .....                                | 34        |
| Print Document Creation .....                          | 35        |
| Transmission of Print Document.....                    | 38        |
| Printing After Checking the Printer Status.....        | 40        |
| <b>■ Automatic Acquisition of Printer Status .....</b> | <b>42</b> |
| Event List .....                                       | 43        |
| <b>■ Exception handling .....</b>                      | <b>44</b> |
| Steps for Handling.....                                | 44        |
| Error Statuses and Actions to Take .....               | 46        |
| Printer Statuses and Actions to Take.....              | 47        |
| Battery Status .....                                   | 49        |

---

## API Reference ..... 51

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>■ ePOS-Print API.....</b>            | <b>51</b> |
| Builder class (Constructor).....        | 54        |
| ClearCommandBuffer.....                 | 57        |
| AddTextAlign .....                      | 58        |
| AddTextLineSpace .....                  | 60        |
| AddTextRotate .....                     | 61        |
| AddText.....                            | 63        |
| AddTextLang .....                       | 65        |
| AddTextFont .....                       | 67        |
| AddTextSmooth .....                     | 69        |
| AddTextDouble .....                     | 71        |
| AddTextSize .....                       | 73        |
| AddTextStyle.....                       | 75        |
| AddTextPosition.....                    | 77        |
| AddFeedUnit .....                       | 79        |
| AddFeedLine .....                       | 80        |
| AddImageAsync .....                     | 81        |
| AddImageAsync (Previous format) .....   | 85        |
| AddLogo .....                           | 90        |
| AddBarcode .....                        | 92        |
| AddSymbol.....                          | 98        |
| AddPageBegin .....                      | 105       |
| AddPageEnd .....                        | 107       |
| AddPageArea .....                       | 109       |
| AddPageDirection .....                  | 111       |
| AddPagePosition .....                   | 113       |
| AddPageLine .....                       | 115       |
| AddPageRectangle.....                   | 117       |
| AddCut .....                            | 119       |
| AddPulse .....                          | 121       |
| AddSound .....                          | 123       |
| AddFeedPosition.....                    | 125       |
| AddLayout.....                          | 127       |
| AddCommand .....                        | 130       |
| Print class (Constructor).....          | 132       |
| OpenPrinterAsync .....                  | 133       |
| OpenPrinterAsync(Previous format) ..... | 136       |
| ClosePrinterAsync.....                  | 139       |
| SendDataAsync.....                      | 141       |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| BeginTransactionAsync .....               | 144        |
| EndTransactionAsync .....                 | 146        |
| SetStatusChangeEventCallback.....         | 148        |
| SetOnlineEventCallback .....              | 150        |
| SetOfflineEventCallback .....             | 152        |
| SetPowerOffEventCallback.....             | 154        |
| SetCoverOkEventCallback .....             | 156        |
| SetCoverOpenEventCallback.....            | 158        |
| SetPaperOkEventCallback .....             | 160        |
| SetPaperNearEndEventCallback.....         | 162        |
| SetPaperEndEventCallback .....            | 164        |
| SetDrawerClosedEventCallback.....         | 166        |
| SetDrawerOpenEventCallback.....           | 168        |
| SetBatteryLowEventCallback .....          | 170        |
| SetBatteryOkEventCallback .....           | 172        |
| SetBatteryStatusChangeEventCallback ..... | 174        |
| GetStatusAsync.....                       | 176        |
| GetPrinterStatus .....                    | 178        |
| <b>■ Printer Search API.....</b>          | <b>180</b> |
| StartAsync .....                          | 180        |
| StopAsync .....                           | 182        |
| GetDeviceInfoList .....                   | 183        |
| GetResult(Previous format) .....          | 185        |
| <b>■ Log Setting API.....</b>             | <b>186</b> |
| SetLogSettings .....                      | 186        |

---

## Command Transmission/Reception..... 191

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>■ Programming.....</b>                                  | <b>191</b> |
| Programming Flow .....                                     | 191        |
| Opening a Device Port .....                                | 192        |
| Sending Data .....   | 192        |
| Receiving Data .....                                       | 193        |
| Closing the Device Port.....                               | 193        |
| Exception handling.....                                    | 194        |
| <b>■ Command Transmission/Reception API Reference.....</b> | <b>196</b> |
| OpenAsync.....   | 196        |
| CloseAsync .....   | 198        |
| WriteBytes .....   | 199        |
| WriteAsync.....  | 200        |
| ReadBytes.....   | 202        |
| ReadAsync .....  | 204        |

---

## Appendix..... 207

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>■ List of Supported APIs for Each Printer Model.....</b> | <b>207</b> |
| <b>■ Support Information by Printer .....</b>               | <b>208</b> |
| TM-m10.....   | 208        |
| TM-m30.....   | 210        |
| TM-P20 (ANK model / Multi-language model) .....             | 212        |
| TM-P60 .....  | 214        |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| TM-P60II/ TM-P60II with Peeler (ANK model / Multi-language model)..... | 216 |
| TM-P80 (ANK model / Multi-language model).....                         | 218 |
| TM-T20 .....   | 220 |
| TM-T20II.....  | 221 |
| TM-T70 (ANK model).....  | 222 |
| TM-T70 (Multi-language model).....                                     | 223 |
| TM-T70II (ANK model) .....   | 224 |
| TM-T70II (Multi-language model) .....                                  | 225 |
| TM-T81II.....  | 227 |
| TM-T82 .....   | 228 |
| TM-T82II (ANK model / Multi-language model).....                       | 229 |
| TM-T88V (ANK model / Multi-language model).....                        | 231 |
| TM-T90II.....  | 233 |
| TM-U220 .....  | 234 |
| TM-U330 .....  | 236 |

## ■ **Cautions..... 237**

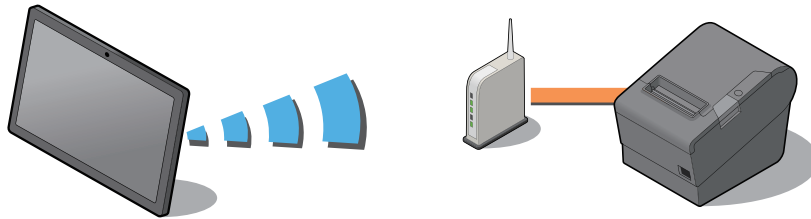
|   |     |
|---|-----|
| If you Use the Printer from Multiple Mobile Terminals ..... | 237 |
| To specify a transaction.....                               | 239 |



# Overview

This chapter describes the features of and the specifications for ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps.

## Overview of ePOS-Print SDK



The ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps is an SDK aimed at development engineers who are developing Windows Store apps for printing on an Epson TM printer. Applications are developed using the APIs provided by ePOS-Print SDK.

ePOS-Print SDK provides ePOS-Print SDK for iOS for iOS applications as well as ePOS-Print SDK for Android for Android applications.



APIs for transmitting/receiving commands to/from TM printers are also provided.

A command transmission/reception API cannot be used with the ePOS-Print API, Print class. For details on the command transmission/reception APIs, refer to [Command Transmission/Reception \(p.191\)](#).

## Features

- ❑ Allows printing to TM printers from Windows Store apps.
- ❑ Allows acquisition of TM printer status from Windows Store apps.

## Function

---

### ***ePOS-Print API***

- ☐ Print setting (alignment/line feed space/text rotation/page mode)
- ☐ Character data setting (language/font (device font)/double-sizing/scale/smoothing/print position)
- ☐ Character style setting (inversion of black and white/underline/bold)
- ☐ Paper feed setting (in dots/in lines)
- ☐ Image printing (raster image/NV graphics)
- ☐ Barcode printing  
(For barcodes that can be printed by each model, refer to [Support Information by Printer \(p.208\).](#))
- ☐ 2D-Code printing  
(For 2D-Code that can be printed by each model, refer to [Support Information by Printer \(p.208\).](#))
- ☐ Drawer kick function
- ☐ Buzzer function
- ☐ Paper layout setting
- ☐ Label / black mark paper feed setting
- ☐ ESC/POS command transmission
- ☐ Acquisition of response from printer (printing result / printer status / battery status)
- ☐ Compatible with Asian languages (simplified Chinese, traditional Chinese, Korean, Thai, Vietnamese)

---

### ***Printer Search API***

- ☐ Search for printers

---

### ***Log Setting API***

- ☐ Log output setting  
(This API allows to output log data to a device's storage and a server that can establish TCP connection.)

# Operating Environment

## OS

- ❑ Windows 10 (32 bit/64 bit)
- ❑ Windows 8.1 (32 bit/64 bit)



- For the latest version, refer to the README file.
- Windows RT (ARM) is not supported.

## Printer

| TM Printer                          | Interface |        |            |
|-------------------------------------|-----------|--------|------------|
|                                     | Wired LAN | Wi-Fi® | Bluetooth® |
| TM-m10 Ethernet                     | ✓         | -      | -          |
| TM-m10 Wi-Fi *                      | ✓         | ✓      | -          |
| TM-m10 <i>Bluetooth®</i>            | -         | -      | ✓          |
| TM-m30 Standard model *             | ✓         | ✓      | -          |
| TM-m30 <i>Bluetooth®</i> model *    | ✓         | ✓      | ✓          |
| TM-P20                              | -         | ✓      | ✓          |
| TM-P60(Receipt) Wi-Fi               | -         | ✓      | -          |
| TM-P60(Receipt) <i>Bluetooth®</i>   | -         | -      | ✓          |
| TM-P60(Peeler) Wi-Fi                | -         | ✓      | -          |
| TM-P60(Peeler) <i>Bluetooth®</i>    | -         | -      | ✓          |
| TM-P60II(Receipt) Wi-Fi             | -         | ✓      | -          |
| TM-P60II(Receipt) <i>Bluetooth®</i> | -         | -      | ✓          |
| TM-P60II(Peeler) Wi-Fi              | -         | ✓      | -          |
| TM-P60II(Peeler) <i>Bluetooth®</i>  | -         | -      | ✓          |
| TM-P80 Wi-Fi                        | -         | ✓      | -          |
| TM-P80 <i>Bluetooth®</i>            | -         | -      | ✓          |
| TM-T20                              | ✓         | -      | -          |
| TM-T20II                            | ✓         | -      | ✓          |
| TM-T70                              | ✓         | ✓      | -          |
| TM-T70II                            | ✓         | ✓      | ✓          |
| TM-T81II                            | ✓         | -      | -          |
| TM-T82                              | ✓         | -      | -          |
| TM-T82II                            | ✓         | -      | -          |
| TM-T88V                             | ✓         | ✓      | ✓          |
| TM-T90II                            | ✓         | ✓      | -          |
| TM-U220 Series                      | ✓         | ✓      | -          |
| TM-U330 Series                      | ✓         | ✓      | -          |

\*: The Wi-Fi interface is disabled when the Ethernet cable is connected.



In the TM printer settings, set only Receive Buffer Full for the Busy Condition.  
Regarding the settings, see the Technical Reference Guide for the TM printer.

## Development Environment

The following are necessary to develop a Windows Store apps.

- ❑ Visual Studio 2013

---

### *Development Language*

- Visual C#
- Visual Basic .NET



The following development languages are not supported:

- \* Visual C++ (C++/CX)
- \* JavaScript

# Contents in the Package

## Package

| File                                    | Description   |
|---|---|
| LibEposPrint.vsix                       | The ePOS-Print library. (Installer)   |
| ePOS-Print_Sample_WinStoreApps.zip      | A sample program file.  |
| README.en.txt                           | A readme file.  |
| README.jp.txt                           | A readme file. (The Japanese-language edition)  |
| EULA.en.txt                             | A software license to use.  |
| EULA.jp.txt                             | A software license to use.<br>(The Japanese-language edition)   |
| ePOS-Print_SDK_WinStoreApps_en_revx.pdf | This manual.<br>Describes the ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store app programming methods and APIs.                                  |
| ePOS-Print_SDK_WinStoreApps_ja_revx.pdf | The Japanese-language edition of this manual.<br>Describes the ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store app programming methods and APIs. |

## Manual

The following manuals are available for ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps.

- ❑ ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps User's Manual (This Document)
- ❑ ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps Application Development Setup Guide

## Sample Program

For a Windows Store apps for TM printers developed using ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps, the following program is available.

- ❑ ePOS-Print\_Sample\_WinStoreApps.zip
  - Basic function sample (ePOSPrintSample)
  - Receipt print sample (ePOSReceiptPrintSample)

## Download

For customers in North America, go to the following web site:

<http://www.epsonexpert.com/>

For customers in other countries, go to the following web site:

<https://download.epson-biz.com/?service=pos/>

## Restrictions

- ❑ A communication API ([p.53](#)) and command transmission/reception API ([p.191](#)) in the ePOS-Print APIs cannot be used for the same device at the same time.
- ❑ A maximum of 16 device ports can be opened in the same application at the same time.
- ❑ More than one port cannot be opened for the same device at the same time.
- ❑ ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps cannot co-exist with the EPSON Advanced Printer Driver or OPOS driver:
- ❑ In TCP connection, if communication is performed immediately after the printer is powered off, an error may not occur.
- ❑ Cannot be used in an environment where multiple network adapters are enabled.
- ❑ If the device goes into sleep mode while communicating with a printer via *Bluetooth®*, the connection will be lost. Recovery from that state will be made automatically if reconnection is possible.
- ❑ If the application becomes inactive while communicating with a printer via *Bluetooth®*, the connection may be lost. Recovery from that state will be made automatically if reconnection is possible.
- ❑ You may be requested to enter a passcode during *Bluetooth®* pairing. In that case, enter "0000" or "4254".





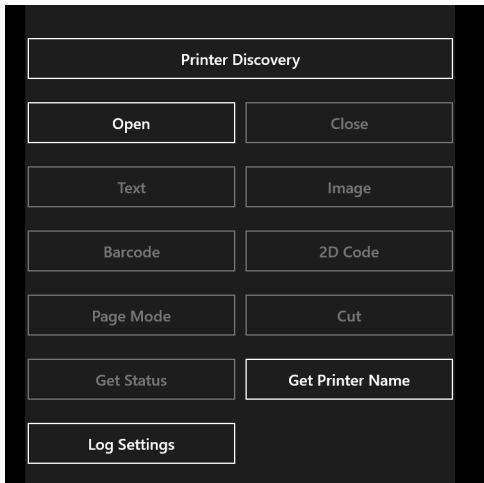
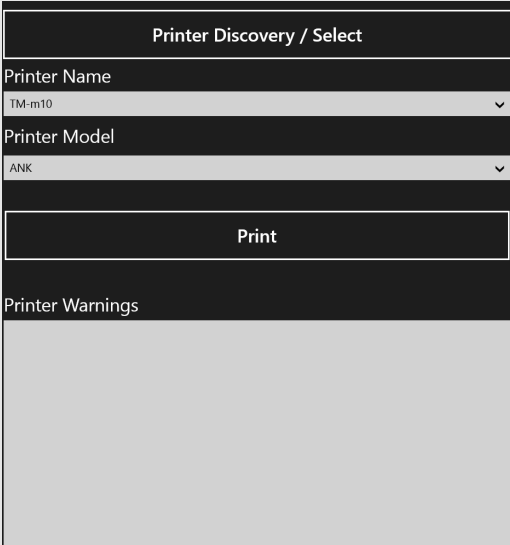
# Sample Program

This chapter describes how to use the sample program.



- For an Windows Store apps for TM printers developed using ePOS-Print SDK, the following program is available.
- The sample program is provided as a Windows Store apps project for use with Visual Studio 2013, including the Visual C#/ Visual Basic .NET source files.

## Functionality

| Sample Program   | Description  |
|--|--|
| <b>&lt;ePOSPrintSample&gt;</b><br>         | <p>The following functions are implemented in the sample program:</p> <p>(The sample program does not contain a functionality for turning text / images / barcodes / etc.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Searching for printers</li> <li>• Opening of port</li> <li>• Closing of port</li> <li>• Text printing</li> <li>• Graphic printing (image file printing)</li> <li>• Barcode printing</li> <li>• 2D-Code printing</li> <li>• Printing in page mode</li> <li>• Paper cutting</li> <li>• Printer status acquisition</li> <li>• Acquisition of printer model name/language information</li> <li>• Log output setting</li> <li>• Display of status event</li> <li>• Display of battery status event</li> </ul> |
| <b>&lt;ePOSReceiptPrintSample&gt;</b><br> | <p>Prints the sample receipt data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Searching for printers</li> <li>• Receipt printing</li> </ul>  |

# Usage Environment

## Development Environment

- Visual Studio 2013



For details about ways to construct a development environment, please refer to the "ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps Application Development Setup Guide".

## Printer

- TM printer supported in ePOS-Print SDK.

## Target device

- Device with a developer license



You need to have a Microsoft account to get a developer license.

## Environmental Construction

Follow the procedures below to use the sample program.



How to start the sample program by sideloading it on the target terminal is described here.

- 1** Install ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps (LibEposPrint.vsix).
- 2** Explode the sample program zip file into an arbitrary directory.
- 3** Select the development language for the sample program and start the sln file.
- 4** Select (Add Reference) in the (PROJECT) menu.
- 5** The Reference Manager screen appears. Select (Windows)-(Extensions).
- 6** Select the checkboxes for the following SDKs and click (OK).
  - Epson ePOS-Print SDK
  - Microsoft Visual C++ 2013 Runtime Package for Windows
- 7** Select as (Store)-(Store Create App Packages) in the (PROJECT) menu.



To run the sample program in the development environment, execute [Rebuild Solution] and [Deploy Solution] in the [BUILD] menu, and start the sample program from the start menu on Windows.

- 8** The "Create App Packages" screen appears. Select (No) and click (Next).
- 9** The "Select and Configure Packages" screen appears. Set the package to create and click (Create).



ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps is developed using C++/CS (unmanaged code). For that reason, be sure to specify either "x86" or "x64" for [Select the packages to create and the solution configuration mappings].

**10** The "Package Creation Completed" screen appears.  
Check the output location and click (OK).

**11** Open the output location directory and copy the folder into an arbitrary location in the target terminal.

**12** In the target terminal, select the "Add-AppDevPackage.ps1" file in the copied folder and select (Run with PowerShell) from Context Menu.



When Windows Power Shell executes, a message appears, prompting you to get a developer license. Use your Microsoft account to get a developer license.

**13** As instructed by the script, sideload the sample application onto the target terminal.

**14** Select a project name from the start menu on Windows of the target terminal.  
The sample program starts.

## How to Use the Program Sample

This section describes how to use the program sample for the following operations:

- ❑ ePOSPrintSample
  - [Search for printers and printing \(p.21\)](#)
  - [Acquisition of Printer Model Name \(p.28\)](#)
- ❑ ePOSReceiptPrintSample
  - [Sample receipt data Printing \(p.29\)](#)

### Search for printers and printing

Use the sample program as follows:

- 1** Start the sample program. For details, refer to [Environmental Construction \(p.19\)](#).
- 2** Search for printers. Push (Printer Discovery) on the main screen.  
Select (Device Type) to display a list of IP addresses/Mac addresses for the printers retrieved on the (Printer List).
- 3** Push the IP address/Mac address of the printer in use from the (Printer List) displayed.
- 4** Open the printer's port. Push (Open) on the main screen.  
The "Device Type" and "IP Address/Mac Address" of the printer selected in procedure 3 are displayed. Select (Printer Name) and (Language).

- 5** Set (Status Monitor).

| Item     | Description  |
|----------|--|
| Enabled  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ON: The status monitor is enabled and the printer status is monitored.</li> <li>• OFF: The status monitor is disabled.</li> </ul> |
| Interval | When Enabled is turned ON, the status monitoring interval is set in units of milliseconds.   |

- 6** Push (Open).

## 7 Execute the following processes:

| Process                    | Description  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Text printing              | Push (Text) on the main screen.<br>For details, refer to <a href="#">Text printing (p.23)</a> .              |
| Graphic printing           | Push (Image) on the main screen.<br>For details, refer to <a href="#">Graphic printing (p.23)</a> .          |
| Barcode printing           | Push (Barcode) on the main screen.<br>For details, refer to <a href="#">Barcode printing (p.24)</a> .        |
| 2D-Code printing           | Push (2D Code) on the main screen.<br>For details, refer to <a href="#">2D-Code printing (p.24)</a> .        |
| Printing in page mode      | Push (Page Mode) on the main screen.<br>For details, refer to <a href="#">Printing in page mode (p.25)</a> . |
| Paper cutting              | Push (Cut) on the main screen.<br>For details, refer to <a href="#">Paper cutting (p.25)</a> .               |
| Log output setting         | Push (Log Settings) on the main screen.<br>For details, refer to <a href="#">Log output setting (p.25)</a> . |
| Printer status acquisition | Push (Get Status) on the main screen.  |

## 8 The following execution results will be displayed. Check the execution results and click (OK).

- Process execution result (error status / printer status / battery status)  
For details, refer to [Process execution result \(p.26\)](#).
- Method (API) execution error  
For details, refer to [Method \(API\) execution error \(p.27\)](#).

## 9 When all processing is finished, Push (Close) on the main screen, and close the printer's port.

## Text printing

Execute the text printing according to the following procedure:

- 1 Enter a string to print for (Print Characters).
- 2 Specifies the character properties for the string to print. The following properties can be specified:

| Property     | Description                                       |
|--------------|---|
| Font         | Set the character font.                           |
| Align        | Set the alignment.                                |
| Line Spacing | Set the line feed space.                          |
| Language     | Set the language.                                 |
| Size         | Set the character scales (vertical / horizontal). |
| Style        | Set the character style (bold / underlining).     |
| X Position   | Set the horizontal start position.                |
| Feed Unit    | Set the paper feed amount.                        |

- 3 Push (Print) to print.

## Graphic printing

Execute the graphic printing according to the following procedure:

- 1 Push (Select Image) to select an image file to print.
- 2 Push (Color Mode) to select the tone.



[Gray 16] is supported by models that support multiple tones. For details, see [AddImageAsync \(p.81\)](#).

- 3 Push (Halftone Method) to select the halftone treatment method.
- 4 Push (Brightness) and input a value to specify brightness.
- 5 Push (Print) to print.

---

## **Barcode printing**

Execute the barcode printing according to the following procedure:

- 1 Set the following for barcodes:

| Setting                    | Description                                   |
|----------------------------|---|
| Type                       | Select the barcode type.                      |
| Data                       | Enter the barcode data.                       |
| HRI                        | Set the HRI position.                         |
| Font                       | Set the HRI font.                             |
| Module Size(Width, Height) | Set the barcode module size (width / height). |

- 2 Push (Print) to print.

---

## **2D-Code printing**

Execute the 2D-Code printing according to the following procedure:

- 1 Select the 2D-Code type using (Type).
- 2 Enter the 2D-Code data for (Data).
- 3 Set the following for each 2D-Code:

| Setting  | Description                                  |
|--|--|
| Error Correction Level<br>(PDF417, QR Code,<br>Aztec Code, DataMatrix) | Set the error correction level.              |
| Module Size(Width, Height)   | Set the 2D-Code module size (width / height) |
| Max Size   | Set the maximum 2D-Code size.                |

- 4 Push (Print) to print.



### Printing in page mode

Execute the printing in page mode according to the following procedure:

- 1 Enter a string to print for (Print Characters).
- 2 Set the print area using (Print Area).

| Setting | Description                        |
|---------|------------------------------------|
| X       | Set the origin of horizontal axis. |
| Y       | Set the origin of vertical axis.   |
| Width   | Set the width for the print area.  |
| Height  | Set the height for the print area. |

- 3 Push (Print) to print.

### Paper cutting

Execute the paper cutting according to the following procedure:

- 1 Set whether to cut after feeding paper using (Type).
- 2 Push (Print) and execute cutting operation.

### Log output setting

Use the following procedures:

- 1 Set whether to enable the log output function and the log output destination in (Enabled).
- 2 Set the following items according to the log output destination.

| Setting    | Description   |
|------------|---|
| IP Address | Specify the IP address for TCP communication.                                   |
| Port       | Specify the port number for TCP communication.                                  |
| Log Size   | Specify the maximum size of log data that can be saved on the device's storage. |
| Log Level  | Set the level of log data to be output.   |

- 3 Set the method of saving the settings in (Save Settings Permanently).
- 4 Push (Setting) to enable the log output settings.
- 5 After printing, check the log file.  
For details, refer to [SetLogSettings \(p.186\)](#).

## Execution result

### Process execution result

Any of the following will be displayed:

- Result: Any of the following statuses will be displayed:

| String displayed  | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| HR_S_OK           | Succeeded.   |
| HR_E_INVALIDARG   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>An invalid parameter was passed.</li><li>An unsupported model or language of use has been specified.</li></ul> |
| HR_E_ACCESSDENIED | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The open process failed.</li><li>Failed to connect to the device.</li><li>Offline.</li></ul>                   |
| HR_E_ABORT        | The process was timed out.   |
| HR_E_PENDING      | Failed to execute the process.   |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY  | Could not secure the memory required for the process.  |
| HR_E_FAIL         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Used in an illegal manner.</li><li>Another error occurred.</li></ul>   |

- Status: Any of the following printer statuses will be displayed:

| String displayed | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| NO_RESPONSE      | No response from the printer  |
| PRINT_SUCCESS    | Printing is successfully completed  |
| DRAWER_KICK      | Status of the 3rd pin of the drawer kick-out connector = "H"<br>(Other than TM-P20, TM-P60, TM-P60II, TM-P80) |
| BATTERY_OFFLINE  | Battery offline (TM-P20, TM-P60, TM-P60II, TM-P80)  |
| OFF_LINE         | Offline   |
| COVER_OPEN       | The cover is open   |
| PAPER_FEED       | Paper is being fed by a paper feed switch operation   |
| WAIT_ON_LINE     | Waiting to be brought back online   |
| PANEL_SWITCH     | The paper feed switch is being pressed (ON)   |
| MECHANICAL_ERR   | A mechanical error occurred   |
| AUTOCUTTER_ERR   | An autocutter error occurred  |
| UNRECOVER_ERR    | An unrecoverable error occurred   |
| AUTORECOVER_ERR  | An automatically recoverable error occurred   |
| RECEIPT_NEAR_END | No paper in roll paper near end sensor  |
| RECEIPT_END      | No paper in roll paper end sensor   |
| BUZZER           | Buzzer is sounding (compatible devices only)  |

- Battery Status: The following will be displayed.

| String displayed | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| 0xnnnn           | Battery status value<br>For details, refer to <a href="#">Battery Status (p.49)</a> . |

*Method (API) execution error*

Any of the following will be displayed:

- Error Code: Any of the following statuses will be displayed:

| String displayed  | Description   |
|-------------------|---|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An invalid parameter was passed.</li> <li>• An unsupported model or language of use has been specified.</li> </ul> |
| HR_E_ACCESSDENIED | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The open process failed.</li> <li>• Failed to connect to the device.</li> <li>• Printer is offline.</li> </ul>     |
| HR_E_PENDING      | Failed to execute the process.  |
| HR_E_ABORT        | All data couldn't be sent during the specified time.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY  | Could not secure the memory required for the process.   |
| HR_E_FAIL         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Used in an illegal manner.</li> <li>• Another error occurred.</li> </ul>   |

- Method: The API in which a method execution error occurred is displayed.

## Acquisition of Printer Model Name



A command transmission/reception API is used for acquisition of printer model name. For details, refer to [Command Transmission/Reception \(p.191\)](#).

Use the following procedure:

- 1** Start the sample program. For details, refer to [Environmental Construction \(p.19\)](#).
- 2** Search for printers. Push (Printer Discovery) on the main screen.  
Select (Device Type) to display a list of IP addresses/Mac addresses for the printers retrieved on the (Printer List).
- 3** Push the IP address/Mac address of the printer in use from the (Printer List) displayed.
- 4** Push (Get Printer Name) on the main screen.
- 5** Push (Get Printer Name).
- 6** The following will be displayed.

| Content displayed | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| Printer Name      | Displays the model name of the printer.              |
| Language          | Displays the language specifications of the printer. |

## Sample receipt data Printing

Use the following procedure:

- 1** Start the sample program. For details, refer to [Environmental Construction \(p.19\)](#).
- 2** Search for printers. Tap (Printer Discovery / Select) on the main screen.  
Select (Interface Type) to display a list of IP addresses/ Mac addresses/ Device nodes/ Printer names for the printers retrieved on the (Printer List).
- 3** Tap the printer to use from (Printer List) displayed.
- 4** Print the sample receipt data.  
Select (Printer Name) and (Printer Model), then tap (Print) to print.
- 5** When printing fails, the action to take will be displayed.  
Depending on the printer status, a message is displayed in (Printer Warnings).



# Programming Guide

This chapter describes how to write programs in the application development using ePOS-Print SDK.



- Descriptions made using source code in this chapter are based on Visual C#. For any language other than the above, read such descriptions in ways that suit the relevant language.
- For ways to construct a development environment for Windows Store apps that use ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps, please refer to the "ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps Application Development Setup Guide".

## How to Incorporate the ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps

This section explains how to incorporate the ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps.



Explanations are made based on Visual Studio 2013.

Incorporate the SDK using following procedures.

- 1** Create a new project in Visual Studio 2013.
- 2** Declare a communication function in the "Package.appxmanifest" of the created project.
  - TCP declaration
    1. Select (View Designer) in the context menu for "Package.appxmanifest" to display Package.appxmanifest.
    2. Select (Capabilities) to display the "Capabilities" screen.
    3. Select the checkboxes for "Internet (Client)" and "Private Networks (Client & Server)", and save the data.
  - *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> declaration
    1. Select (View Designer) in the context menu for "Package.appxmanifest" to display Package.appxmanifest.
    2. Add the following bold-character portions between the <Capabilities> tags and save the data.

```
<Capabilities>
  <Capability Name="internetClient" />
  <DeviceCapability Name="proximity" />
  <m2:DeviceCapability Name="bluetooth.rfcomm">
    <m2:Device Id="any">
      <m2:Function Type="name:serialPort" />
    </m2:Device>
  </m2:DeviceCapability>
</Capabilities>
```

- 3 Select (Add Reference) in the (PROJECT) menu.
- 4 The Reference Manager screen appears. Select (Windows)-(Extensions).
- 5 Select the checkboxes for the following SDKs and click (OK).
  - Epson ePOS-Print SDK
  - Microsoft Visual C++ 2013 Runtime Package for Windows



Install Epson ePOS-Print SDK using LibEposPrint.vsix.  
For details, see "ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps Application Development Setup Guide".

- 6 Select (Configuration Manager) in the (BUILD) menu.
- 7 The "Configuration Manager" screen appears. Specify "x86" or "x64" for the (Active solution platform) setting and click (Close).



ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps is developed using C++/CS (unmanaged code).  
For that reason, be sure to specify either "x86" or "x64" for [Active solution platform].

- 8 Write the import definition in the source file for the application you want to use.  
See the following:
  - Visual C#: **using LibEposPrint;**
  - Visual Basic: **Imports LibEposPrint**



# ePOS-Print SDK

## Print Mode

There are two types of print modes: standard and page modes.

### Standard mode

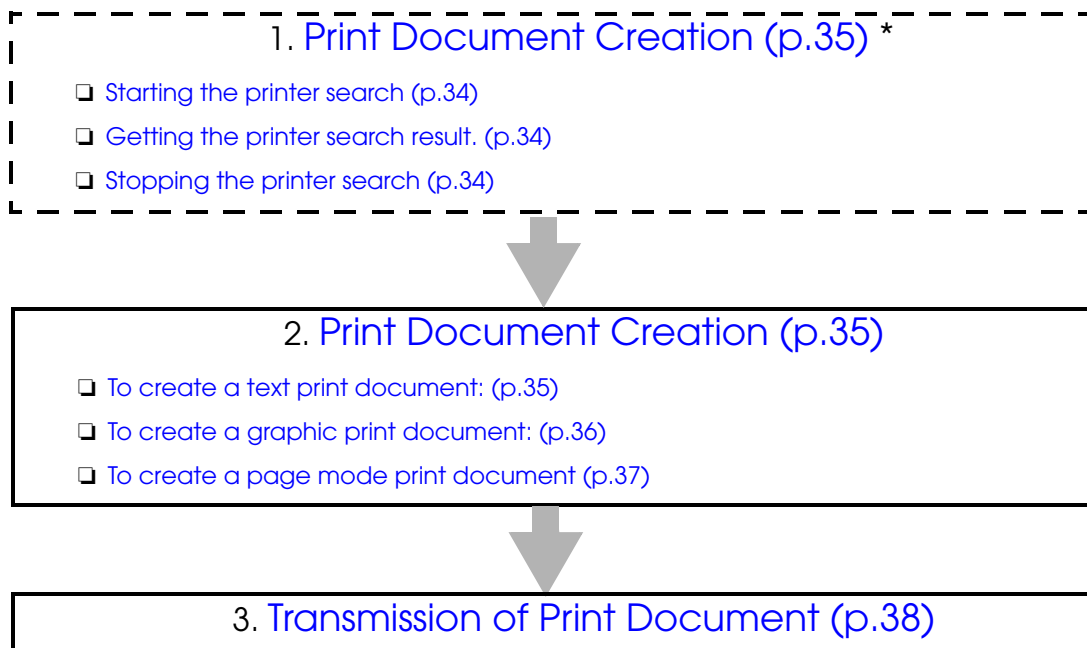
In standard mode, characters are printed line by line. The line feed space is adjusted based on the font size and the height of images, barcodes, etc. This mode is suitable for the type of printing such as printing receipts that requires the paper length to change according to the print space.

### Page mode

In page mode, you set a print area, lay out data in it, and print the data in a batch operation. Characters, images, and barcodes are laid out in the print positions (coordinates).

## Programming Flow

Perform programming following this flow.



\* This is optional.



To ensure successful print operation, write a program in such a way that data is sent after checking the printer status. For the above procedure, refer to [Printing After Checking the Printer Status \(p.40\)](#).

## Printer Selection

### Starting the printer search

Use the Finder class's [StartAsync \(p.180\)](#) to start searching for printers. Please refer to the following code.

```
//Start search
try
{
    //Wi-Fi/Ethernet device
    await Finder.StartAsync(IoDevType.TCP, "255.255.255.255");
    //Bluetooth device
    await Finder.StartAsync(IoDevType.BLUETOOTH, "");
}
//Exception handling
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == IoHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

### Getting the printer search result.

Use the Finder class's [GetDeviceInfoList \(p.183\)](#) to get the result of the printer search. Please refer to the following code.

```
DeviceInfo[] list = null;
//Get device list
try
{
    list = Finder.GetDeviceInfoList(IoFilterOption.DEFAULT);
}
//Exception handling
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == IoHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```



Since the printer search takes time to complete, you might not receive any search results if you call the Finder class's GetDeviceInfoList immediately after you call the StartAsync.

### Stopping the printer search

Use the Finder class's [StopAsync \(p.182\)](#) to stop searching for printers. Please refer to the following code.

```
//Stop search
try
{
    await Finder.StopAsync();
}
//Exception handling
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == IoHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

## Print Document Creation

Create a print document using the [Builder class \(p.51\)](#).

Create a Builder class using the constructor for it and create a print document using APIs of the Builder class. Use the programming example below for your reference.

```
Builder builder = null;

try
{
    //Initialize a Builder class instance
    builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    //Create a print document
    builder.AddTextLang(Lang.LANG_EN);
    builder.AddTextSmooth(Smooth.SMOOTH_TRUE);
    builder.AddTextFont(Font.FONT_A);
    builder.AddTextSize(3, 3);
    builder.AddText("Hello World!\n");
    builder.AddCut(Cut.CUT_FEED);
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    int errCode = ex.HResult;
}
```

### To create a text print document:

To create a text print document, using APIs for text, store the font settings in command buffers to create a print document. Use the programming example below for your reference.



Make the language settings based on the language of the characters you are printing.  
For details, refer to [AddTextLang \(p.65\)](#).

For the string "Hello, World!", to create a print document based on the following settings:

- Font: FontA
- Scale: x 4 (horizontal) and x 4 (vertical)
- Style: Bold

```
Builder builder = null;

try
{
    //Initialize a Builder class instance
    builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    //Create a print document
    //<Configure the print character settings>
    builder.AddTextLang(Lang.LANG_EN);
    builder.AddTextSmooth(Smooth.SMOOTH_TRUE);
    builder.AddTextFont(Font.FONT_A);
    builder.AddTextSize(4, 4);
    builder.AddTextStyle(Reverse.REVERSE_FALSE, Underline.UNDERLINE_FALSE,
                        Emphasis.EMPHASIS_TRUE, Color.UNSPECIFIED);

    //<Specify the print data>
    builder.AddText("Hello World!\n");
    builder.AddCut(Cut.CUT_FEED);
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    int errCode = ex.HResult;
}
```

---

### ***To create a graphic print document:***

To create a graphic print document, for graphics, store the `Windows.Graphics.Imaging.BitmapDecoder` class in the command buffers with [AddImageAsync \(Previous format\) \(p.85\)](#) of the `Builder` class.

Use the programming example below for your reference.

```
using Windows.Storage;
using Windows.Storage.Streams;
using Windows.Graphics.Imaging;

Builder builder = null;

private IRandomAccessStreamWithContentType m_selectStream = null;
Builder builder = null;

try
{
    //Initialize a Builder class instance
    builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);

    //Create a print document
    StorageFile imageFile = await Windows.ApplicationModel.Package.Current.
        InstalledLocation.GetFileAsync("File name of the graphic");
    IRandomAccessStreamWithContentType stream = await imageFile.OpenReadAsync();
    BitmapDecoder imageData = await BitmapDecoder.CreateAsync(stream);

    await builder.AddImageAsync(imageData, 0, 0, (int)imageData.PixelWidth,
        (int)imageData.PixelHeight, Color.DEFAULT, Mode.DEFAULT,
        Halftone.DEFAULT, Builder.PARAM_DEFAULT);
    builder.AddCut(Cut.CUT_FEED);
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    int errCode = ex.HResult;
}
}
```



For ways of graphic printing, you can also print the graphics registered in the printer's NV memory.  
For details, refer to [AddLogo \(p.90\)](#).

### To create a page mode print document

The page mode starts by storing [AddPageBegin \(p.105\)](#) of the Builder class into a command buffer. Store the print area ([AddPageArea \(p.109\)](#)) and the print start position ([AddPagePosition \(p.113\)](#)) in command buffers. Specify the print start position according to the print data. Then, store APIs in command buffers and create print data. For the page mode end, store [AddPageEnd \(p.107\)](#) in a command buffer. Use the programming example below for your reference.



Make the language settings based on the language of the characters you are printing.  
For details, refer to [AddTextLang \(p.65\)](#).

For the string "Hello, World!", to create a print document based on the following settings:

- Page mode print area (in dots):  
Origin of horizontal axis: 100, origin of vertical axis: 50, width: 200, height: 100
- Page mode print positions (in dots):  
Horizontal print position: 0, vertical print position: 42
- Font:       FontA
- Scale:       x 2 (horizontal) and x 2 (vertical)
- Style:       Bold

```
Builder builder = null;

try
{
    //Initialize a Builder class instance
    builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);

    //Create a print document
    //<The page mode starts>
    builder.AddPageBegin();
    builder.AddPageArea(100, 50, 200, 100);
    builder.AddPagePosition(0, 42);
    //<Configure the print character settings>
    builder.AddTextLang(Lang.LANG_EN);
    builder.AddTextSmooth(Smooth.SMOOTH_TRUE);
    builder.AddTextFont(Font.FONT_A);
    builder.AddTextSize(2, 2);
    builder.AddTextStyle(Reverse.REVERSE_FALSE, Underline.UNDERLINE_FALSE,
                        Emphasis.EMPHASIS_TRUE, Color.UNSPECIFIED);
    //<Specify the print data>
    builder.AddText("Hello World!\n");
    //<The page mode ends>
    builder.AddPageEnd();
    builder.AddCut(Cut.CUT_FEED);
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    int errCode = ex.HResult;
}
```

## Transmission of Print Document

Send a print document using the [Print class \(p.53\)](#). Create a Print class using the constructor for it, use `SendDataAsync` to specify the Builder class instance that stores the command buffers for the print document, and send the document.

The command buffers stored in the Builder class instance will be retained until [ClearCommandBuffer \(p.57\)](#) is executed. Execute `clearCommandBuffer` after the success of [SendDataAsync \(p.141\)](#).



If you want to print the same document repeatedly, you don't have to execute `clearCommandBuffer`.

Use the programming example below for your reference.

```
Print printer = null;
Builder builder = null;
try
{
    //Initialize a Print class instance
    printer = new Print();

    //Initialize a Builder class instance
    builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);

    //Create a print document
    //<Configure the print character settings>
    builder.AddTextLang(Lang.LANG_EN);
    builder.AddTextFont(Font.FONT_A);
    builder.AddTextSize(4, 4);
    builder.AddTextStyle(Reverse.REVERSE_FALSE, Underline.UNDERLINE_FALSE,
        Emphasis.EMPHASIS_TRUE, Color.UNSPECIFIED);

    //<Specify the print data>
    builder.AddText("Hello World!\n");
    builder.AddCut(Cut.CUT_FEED);

    //Start communication with the printer
    //<Wi-Fi/Ethernet device>
    await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, , "192.168.192.168",
        Monitoring.MONITORING_FALSE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

    //<Bluetooth device>
    await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_BLUETOOTH, , "00:00:12:34:56:78",
        Monitoring.MONITORING_FALSE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

    //Send a print document
    PrinterStatus sendStatus = await printer.SendDataAsync(builder, 100000);

    //End communication with the printer
    await printer.ClosePrinterAsync();
}
catch(Exception ex){
    //Acquired the error code
    int errCode = ex.HResult;
    //Acquires the printer status at the time of error occurred
    PrinterStatus errStatus = printer.GetPrinterStatus(ex.HResult);

    //Exception processing
}
```

### ***Effective range of command buffers for setting***

The effective range of AddXXX in the Builder class instance used for setting is from the time when AddXXX is set until SendDataAsync is executed. The set value is initialized each time SendDataAsync is executed. Refer to the following:

*Example:*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <pre>Print printer = new Print(); Builder builder = null;</pre>                     |  |
| <pre>Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);</pre>      |  |
| <pre>builder.AddText("Hello, World!\n");</pre>                                      | String for which the addTextFont setting is disabled         |
| <pre>builder.AddTextFont(Font.FONT_A);</pre>  |  |
| <pre>builder.AddText("Hello, World!\n");</pre>                                      | String for which the addTextFont setting is enabled (FONT_A) |
| <pre>PrinterStatus sendStatus = await printer.SendDataAsync(builder, 100000);</pre> |  |
| <pre>builder.AddText("Hello, World!\n");</pre>                                      | String for which the addTextFont setting is disabled         |
| <pre>builder.AddTextFont(Font.FONT_B);</pre>  |  |
| <pre>builder.AddText("Hello, World!\n");</pre>                                      | String for which the addTextFont setting is enabled (FONT_B) |
| <pre>sendStatus = await printer.SendDataAsync(builder, 100000);</pre>               |  |

## Printing After Checking the Printer Status

To ensure successful print operation, print after checking the printer status.

Acquire the printer status in [GetStatusAsync \(p.176\)](#), and print it out when the printer is online.

Use the programming example below for your reference.

```
int retry = 0;
Builder builder = null;

try
{
    //Create a print document
    builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddText("Hello World!\n");
    builder.AddCut(Cut.CUT_FEED);
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    builder = null;
    return;
}

for (retry = 0; retry < 3; retry++)
{
    int errCode = 0;
    Print printer = null;
    PrinterStatus status;

    try {
        //Initialize a Print class instance
        printer = new Print();
        //Start communication with the printer
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                      Monitoring.MONITORING_FALSE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);
    }
    catch (Exception ex) {
        printer = null;
        continue;
    }

    try {
        //<Get printer status>
        status = await printer.GetStatusAsync();
    }
    catch (Exception ex) {
        //<Acquired the error code>
        errCode = ex.HResult;
        //Acquires the printer status at the time of error occurred
        PrinterStatus errStatus = printer.GetPrinterStatus(ex.HResult);
        //Exception processing
    }

    if ((status.printerStatus & Print.ST_OFF_LINE) != Print.ST_OFF_LINE) {
        //Send a print document
        status = await printer.SendDataAsync(builder, 10000);
    }
    else if ((status.printerStatus & Print.ST_OFF_LINE) == Print.ST_OFF_LINE) {
        ;
    }
    else {
        ;
    }
}

catch (Exception ex) {
    //<Acquired the error code>
    errCode = ex.HResult;
    //Acquires the printer status at the time of error occurred
    PrinterStatus errStatus = printer.GetPrinterStatus(ex.HResult);
    //Exception processing
}

try {
    await printer.ClosePrinterAsync();
    printer = null;
}
catch (Exception ex) {
    ;
}

if (errCode != EposHResult.HR_E_ACCESSDENIED) {
    break;
}

builder.ClearCommandBuffer();
builder = null;
```

(1)

(2)

(3)

(4)



- 1** Create print data.
- 2** Acquire the printer status.
- 3** When the printer status is online, send the print data you created in step 1.
- 4** When the printer status is offline, clear the factor that is making the printer status offline. (Such as cover open and no paper.)

# Automatic Acquisition of Printer Status

In the ePOS-Print SDK, the printer status can be automatically notified to the application by means of callback. Refer to the following.

```
//Registration of callback method for giving notification of printer status
private void Status_Change_Event(string deviceName, int status)
{
    //Process//
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    //Initialize the print class instance
    Print printer = new Print();

    try {
        //Register the notification destination of printer status changes
        StatusChangeEvent statusChangeEvent = new StatusChangeEvent(Status_Change_Event);
        printer.SetStatusChangeEventCallback(statusChangeEvent);

        //Start communications with the printer and monitoring of the printer status
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, , "192.168.192.168",
            Monitoring.MONITORING_TURE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        //Process//
    }
    catch(Exception ex)
    {
        //Acquired the error code
        int errCode = ex.HResult;

        //Exception processing
    }
}
```

(1)/(4)

(2)

(3)

## 1 Implement the notification destination method when events occur.



In the above description, the callback method, which notifies the printer status at the intervals specified in [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#), is defined. ePOS-Print SDK has callback method according to each printer status, for example, events such as cover open and drawer open. Use these according to the desired purpose of use. See the [Event List \(p.43\)](#) for the callback method that can be used with ePOS-Print SDK.

## 2 Register the printer status notification destination.

## 3 Use [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#) to start monitoring of the printer status.

## 4 Notify the printer status to the event implemented in (2).



When printer status notification is ended, it ends on the [ClosePrinterAsync \(p.139\)](#) of the Print class.

## Event List



For details on the callback method, refer to [API Reference \(p.51\)](#), which explains the callback method registration API.

| Event                       | Callback method registration API                            |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Printer status notification | <a href="#">SetStatusChangeEventCallback (p.148)</a>        |
| Online notification         | <a href="#">SetOnlineEventCallback (p.150)</a>              |
| Offline notification        | <a href="#">SetOfflineEventCallback (p.152)</a>             |
| Power off notification      | <a href="#">SetPowerOffEventCallback (p.154)</a>            |
| Cover close notification    | <a href="#">SetCoverOkEventCallback (p.156)</a>             |
| Cover open notification     | <a href="#">SetCoverOpenEventCallback (p.158)</a>           |
| Paper OK notification       | <a href="#">SetPaperOkEventCallback (p.160)</a>             |
| Paper near end notification | <a href="#">SetPaperNearEndEventCallback (p.162)</a>        |
| Paper end notification      | <a href="#">SetPaperEndEventCallback (p.164)</a>            |
| Drawer close notification   | <a href="#">SetDrawerClosedEventCallback (p.166)</a>        |
| Drawer open notification    | <a href="#">SetDrawerOpenEventCallback (p.168)</a>          |
| Battery low notification    | <a href="#">SetBatteryLowEventCallback (p.170)</a>          |
| Battery OK notification     | <a href="#">SetBatteryOkEventCallback (p.172)</a>           |
| Battery status notification | <a href="#">SetBatteryStatusChangeEventCallback (p.174)</a> |

# Exception handling

In ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps, a Windows system exception is generated when an error occurs to notify the calling side of such an error. And if an exception occurs when print data is sent, the printer status will be acquired.

The following errors are sent:

| Type           | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| Error status   | Cause of error when each class's API was executed.<br>For details, refer to <a href="#">Error Statuses and Actions to Take (p.46)</a> . |
| Printer status | Status of the printer when print data was sent.<br>For details, refer to <a href="#">Printer Statuses and Actions to Take (p.47)</a> .  |
| Battery status | Status of the printer's battery when print data was sent.<br>For details, refer to <a href="#">Battery Status (p.49)</a> .              |



The printer status and the battery status can be automatically sent to the application through the callback method also when any status change occurs. For details, refer to [Automatic Acquisition of Printer Status \(p.42\)](#).

## Steps for Handling

### ePOS-Print API

Use the programming example below for your reference.

```
Print printer = null;
Builder builder = null;
try
{
    //Initialize a Print class instance
    printer = new Print();

    //Initialize a Builder class instance
    builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    //Create a print document
    builder.AddText("Hello World!\n");
    builder.AddCut(Cut.CUT_FEED);

    //Send a print document
    //<Wi-Fi/Ethernet device>
    await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, , "192.168.192.168",
                                   Monitoring.MONITORING_FALSE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);
    //<Bluetooth device>
    await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_BLUETOOTH, , "00:00:12:34:56:78",
                                   Monitoring.MONITORING_FALSE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

    //<Send a data>
    PrinterStatus sendStatus = await printer.SendDataAsync(builder, 100000);

    //End communication with the printer
    await printer.ClosePrinterAsync();
}
catch(Exception ex){
    //Acquired the error code
    int errCode = ex.HResult;
    //Acquires the printer status at the time of error occurred
    PrinterStatus errStatus = printer.GetPrinterStatus(ex.HResult);

    //Exception processing
}
```

---

## Search API

Use the programming example below for your reference.

```
DeviceInfo[] list = null;

//Start search
try
{
    //<Wi-Fi/Ethernet device>
    await Finder.StartAsync (IoDevType.TCP, "255.255.255.255");
    //<Bluetooth device>
    await Finder.StartAsync (IoDevType.BLUETOOTH, "");

    //Acquire a list of devices
    list = Finder.GetDeviceInfoList (IoFilterOption.DEFAULT);
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    //Exception processing
    if (ex.HResult == IoHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
}
```

## Error Statuses and Actions to Take

In ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps, a Windows system exception with any of the following error statuses is returned.

This section describes the details of error statuses and actions to take, so that error handling can be performed in your application.

| Error status                      | Cause  | Action to Take   |
|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)   | Invalid parameter was passed.<br><Example> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An invalid parameter such as null was passed.</li> <li>A value outside the supported range was specified.</li> <li>An unsupported model name or language specification was specified.</li> </ul>                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The parameter was specified incorrectly. Check the parameter.</li> <li>Cannot be used for unsupported models.</li> </ul>  |
| HR_E_ACCESSDENIED<br>(0x80070005) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Open processing failed.</li> <li>Failed to connect to device.</li> <li>The printer is offline.</li> </ul> <Example> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Could not connect to the designated printer.</li> <li>Failed to send the data to the printer.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the Windows device and the printer.<br/>(The printer's power condition, communication condition, etc.)</li> <li>Eliminate the cause that makes the printer offline.<br/>(Such as cover open and no paper.)</li> </ul>   |
| HR_E_ABORT<br>(0x80004004)        | The specified timeout time was exceeded.<br><Example><br>Could not transmit all the data in the specified time.  | Check the timeout time.<br>Set a value for the timeout time longer than the time required for printing.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E)  | Could not allocate the necessary memory for processing.  | End the unneeded applications.   |
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A)      | Could not execute process.<br><Example><br>Could not execute the process because an identical process is being executed in another thread.   | Review the application processing timing so that processes do not overlap each other.  |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)         | Illegal method used.<br>An unspecified error occurred.<br><Example><br>When the printer was not opened, an API for sending a command to the printer was called.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the API in a proper way. Refer to <a href="#">Programming Flow (p.33)</a>.</li> <li>Check the communication settings of the Windows device. (Wi-Fi connection setting, <i>Bluetooth</i>® connection setting, etc.)</li> <li>Check that there is no problem with the execution environment.</li> </ul> |

## Printer Statuses and Actions to Take

| Printer Status  | Cause   | Action to Take  |
|---|---|---|
| Print.ST_NO_RESPONSE<br>(0x00000001)  | No response from the printer  | Check the printer status including the power condition and cable, and the communication status.       |
| Print.ST_PRINT_SUCCESS<br>(0x00000002)  | Printing is successfully completed  | -   |
| <Other than TM-P20, TM-P60, TM-P60II, TM-P80><br>Print.ST_DRAWER_KICK<br>(0x00000004) | Status of the 3rd pin of the drawer kick-out connector = "H"                | -   |
| <TM-P20, TM-P60, TM-P60II, TM-P80><br>Print.ST_BATTERY_OFFLINE<br>(0x00000004)        | Battery offline status  | Charge the battery.   |
| Print.ST_OFF_LINE<br>(0x00000008)   | Offline   | Eliminate the cause that makes the printer offline. (Such as cover open and no paper.)                |
| Print.ST_COVER_OPEN<br>(0x00000020)   | The cover is open   | Close the printer's cover.  |
| Print.ST_PAPER_FEED<br>(0x00000040)   | Paper is being fed by a paper feed switch operation                         | -   |
| Print.ST_PANEL_SWITCH<br>(0x00000200)   | The paper feed switch is being pressed (ON)                                 | -   |
| Print.ST_MECHANICAL_ERR<br>(0x00000400)   | A mechanical error occurred   | Eliminate the cause of the error and turn the printer on again.                                       |
| Print.ST_AUTOCUTTER_ERR<br>(0x00000800)   | An autocutter error occurred  | Turn the printer off immediately.   |
| Print.ST_UNRECOVER_ERR<br>(0x00002000)  | An unrecoverable error occurred   | Turn the printer off immediately.   |
| Print.ST_AUTORECOVER_ERR<br>(0x00004000)  | An automatically recoverable error occurred                                 | The error status is automatically canceled when the temperature of the head drops as the time passes. |
| Print.ST_RECEIPT_NEAR_END<br>(0x00020000)   | No paper in roll paper near end sensor                                      | Feed paper into the printer.  |
| Print.ST_RECEIPT_END<br>(0x00080000)  | No paper in roll paper end sensor   | Feed paper into the printer.  |
| Print.ST_BUZZER<br>(0x01000000)   | A buzzer is on<br>(only for applicable devices)                             | -   |
|   | Waiting for label to be removed<br>(only for applicable devices)            | Remove the label.   |
| Print.ST_HEAD_OVERHEAT *<br>(0x10000000)  | The head temperature increased, causing an automatically recoverable error. | The error status is automatically canceled when the temperature of the head drops as time passes.     |

| Printer Status                              | Cause  | Action to Take   |
|---|--|--|
| Print.ST_MOTOR_OVERHEAT *<br>(0x20000000)   | The motor driver IC temperature increased, causing an automatically recoverable error. | The error status is automatically canceled when the temperature of the motor driver IC drops as time passes. |
| Print.ST_BATTERY_OVERHEAT *<br>(0x40000000) | The battery temperature increased, causing an automatically recoverable error.         | The error status is automatically canceled when the temperature of the battery drops as time passes.         |
| Print.ST_WRONG_PAPER *<br>(0x00001000)      | The inserted paper is different from the layout settings.                              | Set the proper paper to match the layout settings in the printer.  |


\* Cannot be acquired using SendDataAsync.



Battery Status

The battery status consists of the following 16 bits (0x0000).

| Bit          | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| Upper 8 bits | Common battery status<br>For details, refer to <a href="#">Common battery status (upper 8 bits) (p.49)</a> .        |
| Lower 8 bits | Battery status exclusive by model<br>For details, refer to <a href="#">Support Information by Printer (p.208)</a> . |



"0x0000" is returned if the battery status cannot be acquired or if the model does not support the battery status.

Common battery status (upper 8 bits)

| Battery Status | Cause                           |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| 0x30           | The AC adapter is connected     |
| 0x31           | The AC adapter is not connected |



# API Reference

This chapter describes the APIs provided in the ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps.

## ePOS-Print API

The ePOS-Print APIs are APIs for creating and printing print documents. The following classes are available.

- ❑ Builder class ([p. 51](#))
- ❑ Print class ([p. 53](#))



The APIs that you can use and the settings that you can designate vary based on the printer. For details, refer to [Support Information by Printer \(p.208\)](#).

### Builder class

This class creates print documents for printer control commands such as character strings to print, graphic printing, and paper cutting. The following APIs are available.

| API                      |                                       | Description   | Page                |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|---------------------|
| Constructor              |                                       | Initialize a Builder class instance.                            | <a href="#">54</a>  |
| Clearing command buffers | ClearCommandBuffer                    | Clears the command buffers added by APIs.                       | <a href="#">57</a>  |
| Text                     | AddTextAlign                          | Adds a tag for the text alignment setting.                      | <a href="#">58</a>  |
|                          | AddTextLineSpace                      | Adds a tag for the line feed space setting.                     | <a href="#">60</a>  |
|                          | AddTextRotate                         | Adds a tag for the text rotation setting.                       | <a href="#">61</a>  |
|                          | AddText                               | Adds a tag for printing text.                                   | <a href="#">63</a>  |
|                          | AddTextLang                           | Adds a tag for the target language setting.                     | <a href="#">65</a>  |
|                          | AddTextFont                           | Adds a tag for the text font setting.                           | <a href="#">67</a>  |
|                          | AddTextSmooth                         | Adds a tag for the text smoothing setting.                      | <a href="#">69</a>  |
|                          | AddTextDouble                         | Adds a tag for specifying the double-sized text setting.        | <a href="#">71</a>  |
|                          | AddTextSize                           | Adds a tag for the text scale setting.                          | <a href="#">73</a>  |
|                          | AddTextStyle                          | Adds a tag for the text style setting.                          | <a href="#">75</a>  |
| Paper Feed               | AddTextPosition                       | Adds a tag for specifying the print position of text.           | <a href="#">77</a>  |
|                          | AddFeedUnit                           | Adds a tag for paper feeding (in dots).                         | <a href="#">79</a>  |
|                          | AddFeedLine                           | Adds a tag for paper feeding (in lines).                        | <a href="#">80</a>  |
| Graphic                  | AddFeedPosition                       | Adds a tag for label / black mark paper feeding.                | <a href="#">125</a> |
|                          | AddImageAsync (For image compression) | Compresses image data and adds them to the command buffer.      | <a href="#">81</a>  |
|                          | AddImageAsync                         | Adds multiple tone raster image printing to the command buffer. | <a href="#">85</a>  |
| Barcode                  | AddLogo                               | Adds a tag for an NV logo to be printed.                        | <a href="#">90</a>  |
|                          | AddBarcode                            | Adds a tag for a barcode to be printed.                         | <a href="#">92</a>  |
|                          | AddSymbol                             | Adds a tag for a 2D-Code to be printed.                         | <a href="#">98</a>  |

|                 | API              | Description   | Page                |
|-----------------|------------------|---|---------------------|
| Page mode       | AddPageBegin     | Adds a tag for switching to page mode.                            | <a href="#">105</a> |
|                 | AddPageEnd       | Adds a tag for finishing page mode.                               | <a href="#">107</a> |
|                 | AddPageArea      | Adds a tag for specifying the print area in page mode.            | <a href="#">109</a> |
|                 | AddPageDirection | Adds a tag for specifying the print direction in page mode.       | <a href="#">111</a> |
|                 | AddPagePosition  | Adds a tag for specifying the print position in page mode.        | <a href="#">113</a> |
|                 | AddPageLine      | Adds a tag for drawing a line in page mode.                       | <a href="#">115</a> |
|                 | AddPageRectangle | Adds a tag for drawing a rectangle in page mode.                  | <a href="#">117</a> |
| Cut             | AddCut           | Adds a tag for paper cut.   | <a href="#">119</a> |
| Drawer kick-out | AddPulse         | Adds a tag for the drawer kick-out.                               | <a href="#">121</a> |
| Buzzer          | AddSound         | Sets the buzzer sounding cycle and adds it to the command buffer. | <a href="#">123</a> |
| Paper Layout    | AddLayout        | Adds a tag for paper layout information.                          | <a href="#">127</a> |
| Send Command    | AddCommand       | Adds a tag for inserting commands.                                | <a href="#">130</a> |

**Print class**

Controls the printer by sending a print document created using the Builder class, and monitors the transmission result and the communication status.

| API                                 | Description   | Page                |
|-------------------------------------|---|---------------------|
| Constructor                         | Initialize a Print class instance.  | <a href="#">132</a> |
| OpenPrinterAsync                    | Starts communications with the printer and monitoring of the printer status                             | <a href="#">133</a> |
| OpenPrinterAsync(Previous format)   | Starts communications with the printer and monitoring of the printer status<br>(Timeout cannot be set.) | <a href="#">136</a> |
| ClosePrinterAsync                   | End communication with the printer.   | <a href="#">139</a> |
| SendDataAsync                       | Sends a command to the printer.   | <a href="#">141</a> |
| BeginTransactionAsync               | Starts transaction.   | <a href="#">144</a> |
| EndTransactionAsync                 | Finishes transaction.   | <a href="#">146</a> |
| SetStatusChangeEventCallback        | Registers the printer status notification destination   | <a href="#">148</a> |
| SetOnlineEventCallback              | Registers the online event notification destination   | <a href="#">150</a> |
| SetOfflineEventCallback             | Registers the offline event notification destination  | <a href="#">152</a> |
| SetPowerOffEventCallback            | Registers the power off event notification destination  | <a href="#">154</a> |
| SetCoverOkEventCallback             | Registers the cover close event notification destination  | <a href="#">156</a> |
| SetCoverOpenEventCallback           | Registers the cover open event notification destination   | <a href="#">158</a> |
| SetPaperOkEventCallback             | Registers the paper OK event notification destination   | <a href="#">160</a> |
| SetPaperNearEndEventCallback        | Registers the paper near end event notification destination   | <a href="#">162</a> |
| SetPaperEndEventCallback            | Registers the paper end event notification destination  | <a href="#">164</a> |
| SetDrawerClosedEventCallback        | Registers the drawer close event notification destination   | <a href="#">166</a> |
| SetDrawerOpenEventCallback          | Registers the drawer open event notification destination  | <a href="#">168</a> |
| SetBatteryLowEventCallback          | Registers the battery low event notification destination  | <a href="#">170</a> |
| SetBatteryOkEventCallback           | Registers the battery OK event notification destination   | <a href="#">172</a> |
| SetBatteryStatusChangeEventCallback | Registers the battery status notification destination   | <a href="#">174</a> |
| GetStatusAsync                      | Acquires the printer status and the battery status.   | <a href="#">176</a> |
| GetPrinterStatus                    | When an exception occurs and is thrown, acquires the printer status and the battery status              | <a href="#">178</a> |

## Builder class (Constructor)

Constructor for the Builder class. Initializes a Builder class instance.



When multiple Builder class instances are created, a large amount of memory is consumed. Create a minimum number of instances and use them while clearing command buffers by using [ClearCommandBuffer \(p.57\)](#).

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public Builder(System.String printerModel,  
               LibEposPrint.ModelLang lang);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub Builder(printerModel As String,  
                  lang As LibEposPrint.ModelLang)
```

### Parameter

- printerModel : Specifies the model name for the target printer.

| Set value  | Description |
|------------|-------------|
| "TM-m10"   | TM-m10      |
| "TM-m30"   | TM-m30      |
| "TM-P20"   | TM-P20      |
| "TM-P60"   | TM-P60      |
| "TM-P60II" | TM-P60II    |
| "TM-P80"   | TM-P80      |
| "TM-T20"   | TM-T20      |
| "TM-T20II" | TM-T20II    |
| "TM-T70"   | TM-T70      |
| "TM-T70II" | TM-T70II    |
| "TM-T81II" | TM-T81II    |
| "TM-T82"   | TM-T82      |
| "TM-T82II" | TM-T82II    |
| "TM-T90II" | TM-T90II    |
| "TM-T88V"  | TM-T88V     |
| "TM-U220"  | TM-U220     |
| "TM-U330"  | TM-U330     |

- **lang :** Specifies the language specifications for the printer.

| Set value                          | Printer model       | TM printer-separate setting |        |        |        |          |        |        |          |        |          |          |        |          |         |          |         |         |
|------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|--------|--------|--------|----------|--------|--------|----------|--------|----------|----------|--------|----------|---------|----------|---------|---------|
|                                    |                     | TM-m10                      | TM-m30 | TM-P20 | TM-P60 | TM-P60II | TM-P80 | TM-T20 | TM-T20II | TM-T70 | TM-T70II | TM-T81II | TM-T82 | TM-T82II | TM-T88V | TM-T90II | TM-U220 | TM-U330 |
| ModelLang.<br>MODEL_LANG_ANK       | ANK                 | ✓                           | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | -        | -      | ✓        | ✓       | -        | ✓       | -       |
| ModelLang.<br>MODEL_LANG_JAPANESE  | Japanese            | ✓                           | ✓      | ✓      | -      | -        | -      | ✓      | -        | ✓      | ✓        | -        | -      | -        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | -       |
| ModelLang.<br>MODEL_LANGCHINESE    | Simplified Chinese  | -                           | ✓      | ✓      | -      | -        | -      | -      | -        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | -        | ✓       | ✓       |
| ModelLang.<br>MODEL_LANG_TAIWAN    | Traditional Chinese | ✓                           | ✓      | ✓      | -      | ✓        | ✓      | -      | -        | ✓      | ✓        | -        | -      | ✓        | ✓       | -        | ✓       | -       |
| ModelLang.<br>MODEL_LANG_KOREAN    | Korean              | -                           | -      | -      | -      | -        | -      | -      | -        | -      | ✓        | -        | -      | -        | ✓       | -        | ✓       | -       |
| ModelLang.<br>MODEL_LANG_THAI      | Thai                | -                           | -      | -      | -      | -        | -      | -      | -        | ✓      | ✓        | -        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | -        | ✓       | -       |
| ModelLang.<br>MODEL_LANG_SOUTHASIA | South Asian         | -                           | -      | ✓      | -      | -        | -      | -      | -        | ✓      | ✓        | -        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | -        | ✓       | -       |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Invalid parameter was passed.</li> <li>An unsupported model name or unsupported language specifications were specified.</li> </ul> |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.  |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred.  |

### Example

If you are initializing the command buffer for the TM-T88V ANK model:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModellLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```



## ClearCommandBuffer

Clears command buffers used by APIs of the Builder class.

The command buffers stored in the Builder class instance will be retained until this API is executed.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void ClearCommandBuffer();
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub ClearCommandBuffer()
```

### Example

If you are clearing the command buffer:

- Visual C#

```
Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
///  
try  
{  
    builder.ClearCommandBuffer();  
    builder = null;  
}  
catch (Exception ex)  
{  
    builder = null;  
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)  
`///  
Try  
    builder.ClearCommandBuffer()  
    builder = Nothing  
Catch ex As Exception  
    builder = Nothing  
End Try
```

## AddTextAlign

Adds the text alignment setting to the command buffer.



- This API setting also applies to barcodes/2D-Code.
- When the page mode is selected, use [AddPagePosition \(p.113\)](#) instead of this API to set the alignment.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddTextAlign(LibEposPrint.Align align);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddTextAlign(align As LibEposPrint.Align)
```

*Parameter*

- align : Specifies the text alignment.

| Set value                  | Description             |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Align.ALIGN_LEFT (default) | Alignment to the left   |
| Align.ALIGN_CENTER         | Alignment to the center |
| Align.ALIGN_RIGHT          | Alignment to the right  |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

*Example*

To set alignment to the center:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddTextAlign(Align.ALIGN_CENTER);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddTextAlign(Align.ALIGN_CENTER)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddTextLineSpace

Adds the line feed space setting to the command buffer.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void AddTextLineSpace(int linespc);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub AddTextLineSpace(linespc As Integer)
```

### Parameter

- linespc : Specifies the line feed space (in dots). Specifies an integer from 0 to 255.

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

### Example

To set the line feed space to 30 dots:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddTextLineSpace(30);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddTextLineSpace(30)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddTextRotate

Adds the text rotation setting to the command buffer.



- This API setting also applies to barcodes/two dimensional symbols.
- When the page mode is selected for the print mode, to set text rotation, use the [AddPageDirection \(p.111\)](#) instead of this API function.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddTextRotate(LibEposPrint.Rotate rotate);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddTextRotate(rotate As LibEposPrint.Rotate)
```

### Parameter

- rotate : Specifies whether to rotate text.

| Set value                     | Description                         |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Rotate.ROTATE_TRUE            | Specifies rotated printing of text. |
| Rotate.ROTATE_FALSE (default) | Cancels rotated printing of text.   |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To set text rotation:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddTextRotate(Rotate.ROTATE_TRUE);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddTextRotate(Rotate.ROTATE_TRUE)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddText

Adds the printing of text to the command buffer.



After printing text, to print content other than text, execute line feed or paper feed.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddText(System.String data);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddText(data As String)
```

### Parameter

- data : Specify a character string to be printed.  
For the horizontal tab/line feed, Specifies the following:  
For the horizontal tab/line feed, use the following escape sequences:

| String  | Description         |
|---|---------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visual C# (Escape Sequence)<br/>\t</li> <li>• Visual Basic<br/>vbTab</li> </ul>  | Horizontal tab (HT) |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visual C# (Escape Sequence)<br/>\n</li> <li>• Visual Basic<br/>vbCrLf</li> </ul> | Line feed (CR+LF)   |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visual C# (Escape Sequence)<br/>\\</li> <li>• Visual Basic<br/>\</li> </ul>      | Carriage return     |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To add character strings:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddText("Hello,\t");
    builder.AddText("World\n");
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddText("Hello, " + vbTab)
    builder.AddText("World" + vbCrLf)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```



## AddTextLang

Adds the language setting to a command buffer. Encodes the string specified by [AddText \(p.63\)](#) according to the language information specified by this API.

Specify the value according to the language specifications set for [Builder class \(Constructor\) \(p.54\)](#).

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddTextLang(LibEposPrint.Lang lang);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddTextLang(lang As LibEposPrint.Lang)
```

*Parameter*

- lang : Specifies the target language.

| Set value             | Language                               |
|-----------------------|--|
| Lang.LANG_EN(default) | English(ANK)                           |
| Lang.LANG_JA          | Japanese                               |
| Lang.LANG_ZH_CN       | Simplified Chinese                     |
| Lang.LANG_ZH_TW       | Traditional Chinese                    |
| Lang.LANG_KO          | Korean                                 |
| Lang.LANG_TH          | Thai (South Asia specifications)       |
| Lang.LANG_VI          | Vietnamese (South Asia specifications) |

*Exceptions*

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To set the language as English:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddTextLang(Lang.LANG_EN);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddTextLang(Lang.LANG_EN)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddTextFont

Adds the text font setting to the command buffer.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddTextFont(LibEposPrint.Font font);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddTextFont(font As LibEposPrint.Font)
```

### Parameter

- font : Specifies the font.

| Set value             | Description | TM printer-separate setting |        |        |                 |        |                 |                 |          |                 |         |          |         |         |
|-----------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|--------|--------|-----------------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|----------|-----------------|---------|----------|---------|---------|
|                       |             | TM-m10                      | TM-m30 | TM-P20 | TM-P60/TM-P60II | TM-P80 | TM-T20/TM-T20II | TM-T70/TM-T70II | TM-T81II | TM-T82/TM-T82II | TM-T88V | TM-T90II | TM-U220 | TM-U330 |
| Font.FONT_A (default) | Font A      | ✓                           | ✓      | ✓      | ✓               | ✓      | ✓               | ✓               | ✓        | ✓               | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| Font.FONT_B           | Font B      | ✓                           | ✓      | ✓      | ✓               | ✓      | ✓               | ✓               | ✓        | ✓               | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| Font.FONT_C           | Font C      | ✓                           | ✓      | ✓      | ✓               | -      | -               | -               | -        | -               | -       | ✓        | -       | -       |
| Font.FONT_D           | Font D      | -                           | -      | ✓      | -               | -      | -               | -               | -        | -               | -       | -        | -       | -       |
| Font.FONT_E           | Font E      | -                           | -      | ✓      | -               | -      | -               | -               | -        | -               | -       | -        | -       | -       |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To set the font B:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddTextFont(Font.FONT_B);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddTextFont(Font.FONT_B)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddTextSmooth

Adds the smoothing setting to the command buffer.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void AddTextSmooth(LibEposPrint.Smooth smooth);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub AddTextSmooth(smooth As LibEposPrint.Smooth)
```

### Parameter

- smooth : Specifies whether to enable smoothing.

| Set value                     | Description          |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| Smooth.SMOOTH_TRUE            | Specifies smoothing. |
| Smooth.SMOOTH_FALSE (default) | Cancels smoothing    |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

### Example

To enable smoothing:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddTextSmooth(Smooth.SMOOTH_TRUE);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddTextSmooth(Smooth.SMOOTH_TRUE)
    `///Process//
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process//
    End If
    `///Process//
End Try
```

## AddTextDouble

Adds the double-sized text setting to the command buffer.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void AddTextDouble(LibEposPrint.Double dw,  
                             LibEposPrint.Double dh);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub AddTextDouble(dw As LibEposPrint.DoubleSize,  
                           dh As LibEposPrint.DoubleSize)
```

### Parameter

- dw : Specifies the double-sized width.

| Set value                         | Description                       |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| DoubleSize.DOUBLE_TRUE            | Specifies the double-sized width. |
| DoubleSize.DOUBLE_FALSE (default) | Cancels the double-sized width    |
| DoubleSize.UNSPECIFIED            | Retains the current setting.      |

- dh : Specifies the double-sized height.

| Set value                         | Description                       |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| DoubleSize.DOUBLE_TRUE            | Specifies the double-sized height |
| DoubleSize.DOUBLE_FALSE (default) | Cancels the double-sized height   |
| DoubleSize.UNSPECIFIED            | Retains the current setting.      |



When DoubleSize.DOUBLE\_TRUE or 1 is set for both the dw and dh parameters, double width and height characters are printed.

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To set the size as double width and height:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddTextDouble(DoubleSize.DOUBLE_TRUE, DoubleSize.DOUBLE_TRUE);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddTextDouble([DoubleSize].DOUBLE_TRUE, [DoubleSize].DOUBLE_TRUE)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```



## AddTextSize

Adds the text scale setting to the command buffer.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddTextSize(int width, int height);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddTextSize(width As Integer,  
                        height As Integer)
```

### Parameter

- width : Specifies the horizontal scale of text.

| Set value                 | Description                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Integer from 1 to 8       | Horizontal scale (default : 1) |
| Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED | Retains the current setting.   |

- height : Specifies the vertical scale of text.

| Set value                 | Description                  |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| Integer from 1 to 8       | Vertical scale (default : 1) |
| Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED | Retains the current setting. |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To set a horizontal scale of x 4 and a vertical scale of x 4:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddTextSize(4, 4);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddTextSize(4,4)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddTextStyle

Adds the text style setting to the command buffer.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddTextStyle(LibEposPrint.Reverse reverse,
                           LibEposPrint.Underline ul,
                           LibEposPrint.Emphasis em,
                           LibEposPrint.Color color);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddTextStyle(reverse As LibEposPrint.Reverse,
                           ul As LibEposPrint.Underline,
                           em As LibEposPrint.Emphasis,
                           color As LibEposPrint.Color)
```

### Parameter

- reverse : Specifies inversion of black and white for text.

| Set value                       | Description   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Reverse.REVERSE_TRUE            | Specifies the inversion of black and white parts of characters. |
| Reverse.REVERSE_FALSE (default) | Cancels the inversion of black and white parts of characters.   |
| Reverse.UNSPECIFIED             | Retains the current setting.                                    |

- ul : Specifies the underline style.

| Set value                           | Description                  |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Underline.UNDERLINE_TRUE            | Specifies underlining.       |
| Underline.UNDERLINE_FALSE (default) | Cancels underlining.         |
| Underline.UNSPECIFIED               | Retains the current setting. |

- em : Specifies the bold style.

| Set value                         | Description                                  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Emphasis.EMPHASIS_TRUE            | Specifies emphasized printing of characters. |
| Emphasis.EMPHASIS_FALSE (default) | Cancels emphasized printing of characters.   |
| Emphasis.UNSPECIFIED              | Retains the current setting.                 |

- color : Specifies the color.

| Set value               | Description                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Color.COLOR_NONE        | Characters are not printed.       |
| Color.COLOR_1 (default) | First color                       |
| Color.COLOR_2           | Second color                      |
| Color.COLOR_3           | Third color                       |
| Color.COLOR_4           | Fourth color                      |
| Color.UNSPECIFIED       | Retains the current color setting |

## Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To set the underline style:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddTextStyle(Reverse.UNSPECIFIED, Underline.UNDERLINE_TRUE,
        Emphasis.UNSPECIFIED, Color.UNSPECIFIED);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddTextStyle(Reverse.UNSPECIFIED, Underline.UNDERLINE_TRUE,
        Emphasis.UNSPECIFIED, Color.UNSPECIFIED)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddTextPosition

Adds the horizontal print start position of text to the command buffer.



After executing this API, you cannot use [AddTextAlign \(p.58\)](#) or [AddTextRotate \(p.61\)](#).

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void AddTextPosition(int x);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub AddTextPosition(x As Integer)
```

### Parameter

- **x**: Specifies the horizontal print start position (in dots). Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535.

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

### Example

To set the print position at 120 dots from the left end:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddTextPosition(120);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddTextPosition(120)
    `///Process//
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process//
    End If
    `///Process//
End Try
```

## AddFeedUnit

Adds paper feeding in dots to the command buffer.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void AddFeedUnit(int unit);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub AddFeedUnit(unit As Integer)
```

### Parameter

- unit : Specifies the paper feed space (in dots). Specifies an integer from 0 to 255.

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

### Example

To feed paper by 30 dots:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddFeedUnit(30);
    ///Process//
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process//
    }
    ///Process//
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddFeedUnit(30)
    \\\Process\\
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        \\\Process\\
    End If
    \\\Process\\
End Try
```

## AddFeedLine

Adds paper feeding in lines to the command buffer.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void AddFeedLine(int line);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub AddFeedLine(line As Integer)
```

### Parameter

- unit : Specifies the paper feed space (in lines). Specifies an integer from 0 to 255.

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

### Example

To feed paper by 3 lines:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddFeedLine(3);
    ///Process///
} catch (Exception ex) {
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddFeedLine(3)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```



## AddImageAsync

Adds raster image printing to the command buffer.

Prints the graphic in the `Windows.Graphics.Imaging.BitmapDecoder` class.

Out of the `Windows.Graphics.Imaging.BitmapDecoder` class graphics, the specified scope is converted to raster image data according to this API setting. 1 pixel of the image corresponds to 1 dot of the printer. If transparent shading is included, it is regarded as white.



- Set image compression only for a *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> interface.
- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.
- To print a raster image at high speed, specify `Align.ALIGN_LEFT` for the [AddTextAlign \(p.58\)](#), and specify a multiple of 8 not exceeding the printer's paper width for the width parameter of this API.
- When printing transmission images, the printing speed may become slower.
- Multiple tone printing is not supported in Page Mode. Multiple tone graphic printing is supported in Standard Mode only.
- Image compression is not supported in Page Mode.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction AddImageAsync
    (Windows.Graphics.Imaging.BitmapDecoder data,
     int x, int y, int width, int height,
     LibEposPrint.Color color,
     LibEposPrint.Mode mode,
     LibEposPrint.Halftone halftone,
     double brightness,
     LibEposPrint.Compress compress);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Function AddImageAsync
    (data As Windows.Graphics.Imaging.BitmapDecoder,
     x As Integer, y As Integer, width As Integer,
     height As Integer, color As LibEposPrint.Color,
     mode As LibEposPrint.Mode,
     halftone As LibEposPrint.Halftone,
     brightness As Double,
     compress As LibEposPrint.Compress)
    As Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction
```

## Parameter

- data : Specifies an instance of the Windows.Graphics.Imaging.BitmapDecoder class.
- x : Specifies the horizontal start position in the print area. Specifies an integer from 0 to 65534.
- y : Specifies the vertical start position in the print area. Specifies an integer from 0 to 65534.
- width : Specifies the width of the print area. Specifies an integer from 1 to 65535.
- height : Specifies the height of the print area. Specifies an integer from 1 to 65535.



If the area specified by the x/y parameters and the width/height parameters extends beyond the image size specified by the data parameter, an EposException with ERR\_PARAM contained in its error status occurs.

- color : Specifies the color.

| Set value        | Description                 |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| Color.COLOR_NONE | Characters are not printed. |
| Color.COLOR_1    | First color                 |
| Color.COLOR_2    | Second color                |
| Color.COLOR_3    | Third color                 |
| Color.COLOR_4    | Fourth color                |
| Color.DEFAULT    | First color                 |

- mode : Specify the color mode.

| Set value        | Description                | TM printer-separate setting |        |        |                  |        |                  |        |          |           |                  |         |          |                  |
|------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------|--------|------------------|--------|------------------|--------|----------|-----------|------------------|---------|----------|------------------|
|                  |                            | TM-m10                      | TM-m30 | TM-P20 | TM-P60/ TM-P60II | TM-P80 | TM-T20/ TM-T20II | TM-T70 | TM-T70II | TM-T81 II | TM-T82/ TM-T82II | TM-T88V | TM-T90II | TM-U220/ TM-U330 |
| Mode.MODE_MONO   | Monochrome<br>(2 tone)     | ✓                           | ✓      | ✓      | ✓                | ✓      | ✓                | ✓      | ✓        | ✓         | ✓                | ✓       | ✓        | ✓                |
| Mode.MODE_GRAY16 | Multiple tone<br>(16 tone) | ✓                           | ✓      | -      | -                | -      | -                | -      | ✓        | -         | -                | ✓       | ✓        | -                |
| Mode.DEFAULT     | Monochrome<br>(2 tone)     | ✓                           | ✓      | ✓      | ✓                | ✓      | ✓                | ✓      | ✓        | ✓         | ✓                | ✓       | ✓        | ✓                |

- halftone : Specify the half tone treatment method.

| Set value                         | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Halftone.HALFTONE_DITHER          | Dither<br>(This is suitable for graphic printing).                                   |
| Halftone.HALFTONE_ERROR_DIFFUSION | Error diffusion<br>(This is suitable for mixed printing or characters and graphics). |
| Halftone.HALFTONE_THRESHOLD       | Threshold value<br>(This is suitable for printing of characters).                    |
| Halftone.DEFAULT                  | Default value (dither) selection   |



In the case of multiple tone (16 tone), this is disregarded.

- brightness : Specify the correction value for brightness.

| Set value                      | Description                               |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Actual figure from 0.1 to 10.0 | Brightness correction value (gamma value) |
| Builder.PARAM_DEFAULT          | Select the default value (1.0)            |



If you specify a value other than 1.0, the printing speed will become slower.

- compress : Specifies image compression. Set image compression only for a Bluetooth® interface.

| Set value                     | Description                           | TM printer-separate setting |        |        |                  |        |        |          |        |          |          |                  |         |          |                  |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------|--------|------------------|--------|--------|----------|--------|----------|----------|------------------|---------|----------|------------------|
|                               |                                       | TM-m10                      | TM-m30 | TM-P20 | TM-P60/ TM-P60II | TM-P80 | TM-T20 | TM-T20II | TM-T70 | TM-T70II | TM-T81II | TM-T82/ TM-T82II | TM-T88V | TM-T90II | TM-U220/ TM-U330 |
| Compress.<br>COMPRESS_DEFLATE | Image compression is carried out.     | ✓                           | ✓      | ✓      | -                | -      | -      | ✓        | -      | ✓        | -        | -                | ✓       | -        | -                |
| Compress.<br>COMPRESS_NONE    | Image compression is not carried out. | ✓                           | ✓      | ✓      | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓                | ✓       | ✓        | ✓                |
| Compress.DEFAULT              | Image compression is not carried out. | ✓                           | ✓      | ✓      | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓                | ✓       | ✓        | ✓                |

## Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

- Visual C#

```
using Windows.Graphics.Imaging;

private async void sampleImageFunction()
{
    try
    {
        BitmapDecoder imageData = null;
        ///Process///
        Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
        await builder.AddImageAsync(imageData, 0, 0, 256, 256, Color.DEFAULT,
                                    Mode.MODE_MONO, Halftone.HALFTONE_DITHER, 1.0,
                                    Compress.COMPRESS_DEFLATE);
        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
        ///Process///
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Imports Windows.Graphics.Image

Private Async Sub sampleImageFunction()
    Dim imageData As BitmapDecoder = Nothing
    `///Process///
    Try
        Dim builder As Builder
        = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
        Await builder.AddImageAsync(imageData, 0, 0, 256, 256, Color.DEFAULT,
                                    Mode.MODE_MONO, Halftone.HALFTONE_DITHER, 1.0,
                                    Compress.COMPRESS_DEFLATE)
        `///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            `///Process///
        End If
        `///Process///
    End Try
End Try
```

## AddImageAsync (Previous format)

Adds raster image printing to the command buffer.

Prints the graphic in the Windows.Graphics.Imaging.BitmapDecoder class.

Out of the Windows.Graphics.Imaging.BitmapDecoder class graphics, the specified scope is converted to raster image data according to this API setting. 1 pixel of the image corresponds to 1 dot of the printer. If transparent shading is included, it is regarded as white.



- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel().
- To print a raster image at high speed, specify Align.ALIGN\_LEFT for the [AddTextAlign \(p.58\)](#), and specify a multiple of 8 not exceeding the printer's paper width for the width parameter of this API.
- When printing transmission images, the printing speed may become slower.
- Multiple tone printing is not supported in Page Mode. Multiple tone graphic printing is supported in Standard Mode only.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction AddImageAsync
    (Windows.Graphics.Imaging.BitmapDecoder data,
     int x, int y, int width, int height,
     LibEposPrint.Color color,
     LibEposPrint.Mode mode,
     LibEposPrint.Halftone halftone,
     double brightness);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Function AddImageAsync
    (data As Windows.Graphics.Imaging.BitmapDecoder,
     x As Integer, y As Integer, width As Integer,
     height As Integer, color As LibEposPrint.Color,
     mode As LibEposPrint.Mode,
     halftone As LibEposPrint.Halftone,
     brightness As Double)
    As Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction
```

## Parameter

- data : Specifies an instance of the Windows.Graphics.Imaging.BitmapDecoder class.
- x : Specifies the horizontal start position in the print area. Specifies an integer from 0 to 65534.
- y : Specifies the vertical start position in the print area. Specifies an integer from 0 to 65534.
- width : Specifies the width of the print area. Specifies an integer from 1 to 65535.
- height : Specifies the height of the print area. Specifies an integer from 1 to 65535.



If the area specified by the x/y parameters and the width/height parameters extends beyond the image size specified by the data parameter, an EposException with ERR\_PARAM contained in its error status occurs.

- color : Specifies the color.

| Set value        | Description                 |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| Color.COLOR_NONE | Characters are not printed. |
| Color.COLOR_1    | First color                 |
| Color.COLOR_2    | Second color                |
| Color.COLOR_3    | Third color                 |
| Color.COLOR_4    | Fourth color                |
| Color.DEFAULT    | First color                 |

- mode : Specify the color mode.

| Set value        | Description             | TM printer-separate setting |        |        |                  |        |                  |        |          |          |                  |         |          |                  |
|------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|--------|--------|------------------|--------|------------------|--------|----------|----------|------------------|---------|----------|------------------|
|                  |                         | TM-m10                      | TM-m30 | TM-P20 | TM-P60/ TM-P60II | TM-P80 | TM-T20/ TM-T20II | TM-T70 | TM-T70II | TM-T81II | TM-T82/ TM-T82II | TM-T88V | TM-T90II | TM-U220/ TM-U330 |
| Mode.MODE_MONO   | Monochrome (2 tone)     | ✓                           | ✓      | ✓      | ✓                | ✓      | ✓                | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓                | ✓       | ✓        | ✓                |
| Mode.MODE_GRAY16 | Multiple tone (16 tone) | ✓                           | ✓      | -      | -                | -      | -                | -      | ✓        | -        | -                | ✓       | ✓        | -                |
| Mode.DEFAULT     | Monochrome (2 tone)     | ✓                           | ✓      | ✓      | ✓                | ✓      | ✓                | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓                | ✓       | ✓        | ✓                |

- halftone : Specify the half tone treatment method.

| Set value                         | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Halftone.HALFTONE_DITHER          | Dither<br>(This is suitable for graphic printing).                                   |
| Halftone.HALFTONE_ERROR_DIFFUSION | Error diffusion<br>(This is suitable for mixed printing or characters and graphics). |
| Halftone.HALFTONE_THRESHOLD       | Threshold value<br>(This is suitable for printing of characters).                    |
| Halftone.DEFAULT                  | Default value (dither) selection   |



In the case of multiple tone (16 tone), this is disregarded.

- brightness : Specify the correction value for brightness.

| Set value                      | Description                               |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Actual figure from 0.1 to 10.0 | Brightness correction value (gamma value) |
| Builder.PARAM_DEFAULT          | Select the default value (1.0)            |



If you specify a value other than 1.0, the printing speed will become slower.

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

- Visual C#

```
using Windows.Graphics.Imaging;

private async void sampleImageFunction()
{
    try
    {
        BitmapDecoder imageData = null;
        ///Process///
        Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
        await builder.AddImageAsync(imageData, 0, 0, 256, 256, Color.DEFAULT,
                                Mode.MODE_MONO, Halftone.HALFTONE_DITHER, 1.0);
        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
        ///Process///
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Imports Windows.Graphics.Image

Private Async Sub sampleImageFunction()
    Dim imageData As BitmapDecoder = Nothing
    `///Process///
    Try
        Dim builder As Builder
            = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
        Await builder.AddImageAsync(imageData, 0, 0, 256, 256, Color.DEFAULT,
                                Mode.MODE_MONO, Halftone.HALFTONE_DITHER, 1.0)
        `///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            `///Process///
        End If
        `///Process///
    End Try
End Sub
```



To print an image 256 dots wide and 256 dots high in page mode:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    BitmapDecoder imageData = null;
    ///Process///
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddPageBegin();
    builder.AddPagePosition(0, 255);
    await builder.AddImageAsync(imageData, 0, 0, 256, 256, Color.DEFAULT,
        Mode.MODE_MONO, Halftone.HALFTONE_DITHER, 1.0);
    builder.AddPageEnd();
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim imageData As BitmapDecoder = Nothing
    Dim builder As Builder
        = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddPageBegin()
    builder.AddTextPosition(0, 255)
    Await builder.AddImageAsync(imageData, 0, 0, 256, 256, Color.DEFAULT,
        Mode.MODE_MONO, Halftone.HALFTONE_DITHER, 1.0)
    builder.AddPageEnd()
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddLogo

Adds NV logo printing to the command buffer.

Prints a logo registered in the NV memory of the printer.



- Register a logo in advance into the printer using the following utilities:
  - \* Model-dedicated Utility
  - \* TM Flash Logo Setup Utility
- Multiple tone printing is not supported in Page Mode. Multiple tone graphic printing is supported in Standard Mode only.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void AddLogo(int key1, int key2);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub AddLogo(key1 As Integer, key2 As Integer)
```

### Parameter

- key1 : Specifies the key code 1 of an NV logo. Specifies an integer from 0 to 255.
- key2 : Specifies the key code 2 of an NV logo. Specifies an integer from 0 to 255.

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

*Example*

To print a NV logo with the key code parameters specified as 48, 48:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddLogo(48, 48);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddLogo(48, 48)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddBarcode

Adds barcode printing to the command buffer.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void AddBarcode  
(System.String data, LibEposPrint.Barcode type,  
LibEposPrint.Hri hri, LibEposPrint.Font font,  
int width, int height);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub AddBarcode  
(data As String, type As LibEposPrint.BarcodeType,  
hri As LibEposPrint.Hri, font As LibEposPrint.Font,  
width As Integer, height As Integer)
```

### Parameter

- data : Specifies the barcode data as a string.



Specify a string that follows the barcode standard specified by the type parameter. If the specified string does not conform to the standard, a barcode will not be printed.

| Barcode type | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| UPC-A        | When an 11-digit number is specified, a check digit is automatically added.<br>When a 12-digit number is specified, the 12th digit is processed as a check digit but the check digit is not validated.   |
| UPC-E        | Specify 0 as the first digit.<br>Specify the manufacturer code in the digits 2 to 6.<br>Specify (right-align) the item code in the digits 7 to 11. The number of item code digits varies depending on the manufacturer code. Specify 0s in empty digits. |
| EAN13        | When an 11-digit number is specified, a check digit is automatically added.  |
| JAN13        | When a 12-digit number is specified, the 12th digit is processed as a check digit but the check digit is not validated.  |
| EAN8         | When a 7-digit number is specified, a check digit is automatically added.  |
| JAN8         | When an 8-digit number is specified, the 8th digit is processed as a check digit but the check digit is not validated.   |
| CODE39       | When the first character is *, the character is processed as the start character. In other cases, a start character is automatically added.  |
| ITF          | Start and stop codes are automatically added.<br>Check digits are not added or validated.  |
| CODABAR      | Specify a start character (A to D, a to d).<br>Specify a stop character (A to D, a to d).<br>Check digits are not added or validated.  |

| Barcode type                | Description   |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
|-----------------------------|---|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|---------|----|---------|----|---------|----|--------|----|----|----|
| CODE93                      | <p>Start and stop characters are automatically added.</p> <p>A check digit is automatically calculated and added.</p>   |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| CODE128                     | <p>Specify a start character (CODE A, CODE B, CODE C).</p> <p>A stop character is automatically added.</p> <p>A check digit is automatically calculated and added.</p> <p>To encode each of the following characters, specify two characters starting with the character "{":</p> <table> <tr><td>FNC1:</td><td>{1</td></tr> <tr><td>FNC2:</td><td>{2</td></tr> <tr><td>FNC3:</td><td>{3</td></tr> <tr><td>FNC4:</td><td>{4</td></tr> <tr><td>CODE A:</td><td>{A</td></tr> <tr><td>CODE B:</td><td>{B</td></tr> <tr><td>CODE C:</td><td>{C</td></tr> <tr><td>SHIFT:</td><td>{S</td></tr> <tr><td>{:</td><td>{{</td></tr> </table>   | FNC1: | {1 | FNC2: | {2 | FNC3: | {3 | FNC4: | {4 | CODE A: | {A | CODE B: | {B | CODE C: | {C | SHIFT: | {S | {: | {{ |
| FNC1:                       | {1  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| FNC2:                       | {2  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| FNC3:                       | {3  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| FNC4:                       | {4  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| CODE A:                     | {A  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| CODE B:                     | {B  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| CODE C:                     | {C  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| SHIFT:                      | {S  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| {:                          | {{  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| GS1-128                     | <p>A start character, a check digit, and a stop character are automatically added.</p> <p>FNC1 is automatically added to the start of the data. It is not added half way through the data.</p> <p>To automatically calculate and add a check digit for an application identifier (AI) and the subsequent data, specify the character "*" in the position of the check digit.</p> <p>You can enclose an application identifier (AI) in parentheses. The parentheses are used as HRI print characters and are not encoded as data.</p> <p>You can insert spaces between an application identifier (AI) and data. The spaces are used as HRI print characters and are not encoded as data.</p> <p>To encode each of the following characters, specify two characters starting with the character "{":</p> <table> <tr><td>FNC1:</td><td>{1</td></tr> <tr><td>FNC3:</td><td>{3</td></tr> <tr><td>(:</td><td>{{</td></tr> <tr><td>):</td><td>{}</td></tr> <tr><td>*:</td><td>{*</td></tr> <tr><td>{:</td><td>{{</td></tr> </table> | FNC1: | {1 | FNC3: | {3 | (:    | {{ | ):    | {} | *:      | {* | {:      | {{ |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| FNC1:                       | {1  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| FNC3:                       | {3  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| (:                          | {{  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| ):                          | {}  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| *:                          | {*  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| {:                          | {{  |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional | Specify a 13-digit global trade item number (GTIN) not including an application identifier (AI) or a check digit.   |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| GS1 DataBar Truncated       |   |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |
| GS1 DataBar Limited         |   |       |    |       |    |       |    |       |    |         |    |         |    |         |    |        |    |    |    |

| Barcode type         | Description   |
|----------------------|---|
| GS1 DataBar Expanded | <p>You can enclose an application identifier (AI) in parentheses. The parentheses are used as HRI print characters and are not encoded as data.</p> <p>To encode each of the following characters, specify two characters starting with the character "{":</p> <p>FNC1:            {1</p> <p>(:                {(<br/> ):                {)</p> |

To specify binary data that cannot be represented by character strings, use the following escape sequences.

| String | Description  |
|--------|--------------|
| \xnn   | Control code |
| \\     | Back slash   |

- type : Specifies the barcode type.

| Set value                                       | Barcode type                |
|---|-----------------------------|
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_UPC_A                       | UPC-A                       |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_UPC_E                       | UPC-E                       |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_EAN13                       | EAN13                       |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_JAN13                       | JAN13                       |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_EAN8                        | EAN8                        |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_JAN8                        | JAN8                        |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_CODE39                      | CODE39                      |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_ITF                         | ITF                         |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_CODABAR                     | CODABAR                     |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_CODE93                      | CODE93                      |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_CODE128                     | CODE128                     |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_128                     | GS1-128                     |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_DATABAR_OMNIDIRECTIONAL | GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_DATABAR_TRUNCATED       | GS1 DataBar Truncated       |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_DATABAR_LIMITED         | GS1 DataBar Limited         |
| BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_DATABAR_EXPANDED        | GS1 DataBar Expanded        |

- hri : Specifies the HRI position.

| Set value             | Description                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| Hri.HRI_NONE(default) | HRI not printed                  |
| Hri.HRI_ABOVE         | Above the barcode                |
| Hri.HRI_BELOW         | Below the barcode                |
| Hri.HRI_BOTH          | Both above and below the barcode |
| Hri.UNSPECIFIED       | Retains the current setting.     |

- **font :** Specifies the HRI font.

| Set value            | Description                  |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| Font.FONT_A(default) | Font A                       |
| Font.FONT_B          | Font B                       |
| Font.FONT_C          | Font C                       |
| Font.FONT_D          | Font D                       |
| Font.FONT_E          | Font E                       |
| Font.UNSPECIFIED     | Retains the current setting. |

- **width :** Specifies the width of each module in dots. Specifies an integer from 2 to 6.

| Set value                 | Description                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Integer from 1 to 6       | The width of each module. (Unit: dot) |
| Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED | Retains the current setting.          |

- **height :** Specifies the barcode height in dots. Specifies an integer from 1 to 255.

| Set value                 | Description                     |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Integer from 1 to 255     | The barcode height. (Unit: dot) |
| Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED | Retains the current setting.    |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To print barcodes:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddBarcode("01234567890", BarcodeType.BARCODE_UPC_A, Hri.HRI_BELOW,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, 2, 64);
    builder.AddBarcode("01234500005", BarcodeType.BARCODE_UPC_E, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddBarcode("201234567890", BarcodeType.BARCODE_EAN13, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddBarcode("201234567890", BarcodeType.BARCODE_JAN13, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddBarcode("2012345", BarcodeType.BARCODE_EAN8, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddBarcode("2012345", BarcodeType.BARCODE_JAN8, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddBarcode("ABCDE", BarcodeType.BARCODE_CODE39, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddBarcode("012345", BarcodeType.BARCODE_ITF, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddBarcode("A012345A", BarcodeType.BARCODE_CODABAR, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddBarcode("ABCDE", BarcodeType.BARCODE_CODE93, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddBarcode("{Babcde", BarcodeType.BARCODE_CODE128, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddBarcode("(01)201234567890*", BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_128,
        Hri.UNSPECIFIED, Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddBarcode("0201234567890",
        BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_DATABAR_OMNIDIRECTIONAL, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddBarcode("0201234567890", BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_DATABAR_TRUNCATED,
        Hri.UNSPECIFIED, Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddBarcode("0201234567890", BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_DATABAR_LIMITED,
        Hri.UNSPECIFIED, Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddBarcode("(01)2012345678903", BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_DATABAR_EXPANDED,
        Hri.UNSPECIFIED, Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```



- Visual Basic .NET

```

Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddBarcode("01234567890", BarcodeType.BARCODE_UPC_A, Hri.HRI_BELOW,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, 2, 64)
    builder.AddBarcode("01234500005", BarcodeType.BARCODE_UPC_E, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddBarcode("201234567890", BarcodeType.BARCODE_EAN13, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddBarcode("201234567890", BarcodeType.BARCODE_JAN13, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddBarcode("2012345", BarcodeType.BARCODE_EAN8, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddBarcode("2012345", BarcodeType.BARCODE_JAN8, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddBarcode("ABCDE", BarcodeType.BARCODE_CODE39, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddBarcode("012345", BarcodeType.BARCODE_ITF, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddBarcode("A012345A", BarcodeType.BARCODE_CODABAR, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddBarcode("ABCDE", BarcodeType.BARCODE_CODE93, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddBarcode("{Babcde", BarcodeType.BARCODE_CODE128, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddBarcode("(01)201234567890*", BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_128, Hri.UNSPECIFIED,
        Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddBarcode("0201234567890", BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_DATABAR_OMNIDIRECTIONAL,
        Hri.UNSPECIFIED, Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddBarcode("0201234567890", BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_DATABAR_TRUNCATED,
        Hri.UNSPECIFIED, Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddBarcode("0201234567890", BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_DATABAR_LIMITED,
        Hri.UNSPECIFIED, Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddBarcode("(01)2012345678903", BarcodeType.BARCODE_GS1_DATABAR_EXPANDED,
        Hri.UNSPECIFIED, Font.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)

    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try

```

## AddSymbol

Adds 2D-Code printing to the command buffer.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void AddSymbol
(System.String data, LibEposPrint.Symbol type,
 LibEposPrint.Level level1, int level2, int width,
 int height, int size);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub AddSymbol
(data As String, type As LibEposPrint.SymbolType,
 level1 As LibEposPrint.Level, level2 As Integer,
 width As Integer, height As Integer,
 size As Integer)
```

### Parameter

- data : Specifies 2D-Code data as a character string.



Specify a string that follows the 2D-code standard specified by the type parameter. If the specified string does not conform to the standard, a 2D-code will not be printed.

| 2D-Code type     | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| Standard PDF417  | Convert the character string to the string in UTF-8, apply the escape sequence, and then encode the string.  |
| Truncated PDF417 | The data area can contain up to 928 code words in a maximum of 90 rows, each of which can contain up to 30 code words.   |
| QR Code Model 1  | Convert the character string to the string in Shift-JIS, apply the escape sequence, and then encode the string based on the data type as shown below.          |
| QR Code Model 2  | Number: 0 to 9<br>Alphanumeric character: 0 to 9, A to Z, space, \$, %, *, +, -, ., /, :<br>Kanji character: Shift-JIS value<br>8-bit, byte data: 0x00 to 0xff |

| 2D-Code type                        | Description   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| MaxiCode Mode 2                     | <p>Convert the character string to the string in UTF-8, apply the escape sequence, and then encode the string.</p> <p>In Modes 2 and 3, when the first piece of data is ()&gt;\x1e01\x1dyy (where yy is a two-digit number), this is processed as the message header, and the subsequent data is processed as the primary message. In other cases, from the first piece of data, data is processed as the primary message.</p> <p>In Mode 2, specify the primary message in the following format:<br/>Postal code (1- to 9-digit number) GS:(\x1d) ISO country code (1- to 3-digit number) GS:(\x1d) Service class code (1- to 3-digit number)</p> <p>In Mode 3, specify the primary message in the following format:<br/>Postal code (1 to 6 pieces of data convertible by Code Set A) GS:(\x1d) ISO country code (1- to 3-digit number) GS:(\x1d) Service class code (1- to 3-digit number)</p> |
| MaxiCode Mode 3                     |   |
| MaxiCode Mode 4                     |   |
| MaxiCode Mode 5                     |   |
| MaxiCode Mode 6                     |   |
| GS1 DataBar Stacked                 | <p>Convert the character string to the string in UTF-8, apply the escape sequence, and then encode the string.</p> <p>Specify a 13-digit global trade item number (GTIN) not including an application identifier (AI) or a check digit.</p>   |
| GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional |   |
| GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked        | <p>Convert the character string to the string in UTF-8, apply the escape sequence, and then encode the string.</p> <p>You can enclose an application identifier (AI) in parentheses. The parentheses are used as HRI print characters and are not encoded as data.</p> <p>To encode each of the following characters, specify two characters starting with the character "{":</p> <pre> FNC1:    {1 (:       {( ):       } </pre>   |
| Aztec Code Full-Range mode          | <p>After converting the character string to UTF-8, conduct the escape sequence and encode.</p> <p>Up to 3,067 characters of text, 3,832 numerical figures and 1,914 bytes of binary data can be specified.</p>  |
| Aztec Code Compact mode             | <p>After converting the character string to UTF-8, conduct the escape sequence and encode.</p> <p>Up to 89 characters of text, 110 numerical figures and 53 bytes of binary data can be specified.</p>  |
| DataMatrix square                   | <p>After converting the character string to UTF-8, conduct the escape sequence and encode.</p> <p>The symbol is either a square ranging in size from 10 lines x 10 rows to 144 lines x 144 rows, or a rectangle comprising 8 lines, 12 lines or 16 lines. Up to 2,335 alphanumerical, 3,116 numerical figures and 1,556 bytes of binary data can be specified.</p>  |
| DataMatrix rectangle, 8 lines       |   |
| DataMatrix rectangle, 12 lines      |   |
| DataMatrix rectangle, 16 lines      |   |

To specify binary data that cannot be represented by character strings, use the following escape sequences.

| String | Description  |
|--------|--------------|
| \xnn   | Control code |
| \\     | Back slash   |

- type : Specifies the 2D-Code type.

| Set value   | 2D-Code type                        |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_PDF417_STANDARD                     | Standard PDF417                     |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_PDF417_TRUNCATED                    | Truncated PDF417                    |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_QRCODE_MODEL_1                      | QR Code Model 1                     |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_QRCODE_MODEL_2                      | QR Code Model 2                     |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_MAXICODE_MODE_2                     | MaxiCode Mode 2                     |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_MAXICODE_MODE_3                     | MaxiCode Mode 3                     |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_MAXICODE_MODE_4                     | MaxiCode Mode 4                     |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_MAXICODE_MODE_5                     | MaxiCode Mode 5                     |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_MAXICODE_MODE_6                     | MaxiCode Mode 6                     |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_GS1_DATABAR_STACKED                 | GS1 DataBar Stacked                 |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_GS1_DATABAR_STACKED_OMNIDIRECTIONAL | GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_GS1_DATABAR_EXPANDED_STACKED        | GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked        |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_AZTECCODE_FULLRANGE                 | Aztec Code Full-Range mode          |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_AZTECCODE_COMPACT                   | Aztec Code Compact mode             |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_DATAMATRIX_SQUARE                   | DataMatrix square                   |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_DATAMATRIX_RECTANGLE_8              | DataMatrix rectangle, 8 lines       |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_DATAMATRIX_RECTANGLE_12             | DataMatrix rectangle, 12 lines      |
| SymbolType.SYMBOL_DATAMATRIX_RECTANGLE_16             | DataMatrix rectangle, 16 lines      |

- level1 : Specifies the error correction level.

| Set value           | Description                      |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| Level.LEVEL_0       | PDF417 error correction level 0  |
| Level.LEVEL_1       | PDF417 error correction level 1  |
| Level.LEVEL_2       | PDF417 error correction level 2  |
| Level.LEVEL_3       | PDF417 error correction level 3  |
| Level.LEVEL_4       | PDF417 error correction level 4  |
| Level.LEVEL_5       | PDF417 error correction level 5  |
| Level.LEVEL_6       | PDF417 error correction level 6  |
| Level.LEVEL_7       | PDF417 error correction level 7  |
| Level.LEVEL_8       | PDF417 error correction level 8  |
| Level.LEVEL_L       | QR Code error correction level L |
| Level.LEVEL_M       | QR Code error correction level M |
| Level.LEVEL_Q       | QR Code error correction level Q |
| Level.LEVEL_H       | QR Code error correction level H |
| Level.LEVEL_DEFAULT | Default level                    |
| Level.UNSPECIFIED   | Retains the current setting.     |



- Select the level according to the 2D-Code type.
- For Aztec Code/ MaxiCode/ two-dimensional GS1 DataBar/ DataMatrix, select Level.LEVEL\_DEFAULT.

- level2 : Specifies the error correction level.

| Set value                 | Description                                      |
|---------------------------|--|
| 5 to 95 integer           | Aztec Code error correction level (percent unit) |
| Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED | Default level                                    |
| Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED | Retains the current setting.                     |



- Select the level according to the 2D-Code type.
- For PDF417/ QR Code/ MaxiCode/ two-dimensional GS1 DataBar/ DataMatrix, select Builder.PARAM\_DEFAULT.

- width : Specifies the module width.

| Set value                 | Description                  |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| Integer from 0 to 255     | Module width                 |
| Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED | Retains the current setting. |



MaxiCode is ignored.

- height : Specifies the module height.

| Set value                 | Description                  |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| Integer from 0 to 255     | Module height                |
| Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED | Retains the current setting. |



QR Code/ MaxiCode/ two-dimensional GS1 DataBar/ Aztec Code/ DataMatrix are ignored.

- size : Specifies the 2D-Code maximum size.

| Set value                 | Description                  |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| Integer from 0 to 65535   | 2D-Code maximum size         |
| Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED | Retains the current setting. |



QR Code/MaxiCode/Aztec Code/DataMatrix are ignored.

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HResults occurs.

| HResult                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

### Example

To print 2D-Code:

- Visual C#

```

try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddSymbol("ABCDE", SymbolType.SYMBOL_PDF417_STANDARD,
        Level.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddSymbol("ABCDE", SymbolType.SYMBOL_QRCODE_MODEL_2, Level.LEVEL_Q,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddSymbol("908063840\\x1d850\\x1d001\\x1d\\x04",
        SymbolType.SYMBOL_MAXICODE_MODE_2, Level.UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddSymbol("0201234567890", SymbolType.SYMBOL_GS1_DATABAR_STACKED,
        Level.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddSymbol("0201234567890",
        SymbolType.SYMBOL_GS1_DATABAR_STACKED_OMNIDIRECTIONAL,
        Level.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddSymbol("(01)02012345678903",
        SymbolType.SYMBOL_GS1_DATABAR_EXPANDED_STACKED, Level.UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddSymbol("ABCDE", SymbolType.SYMBOL_AZTECCODE_FULLRANGE,
        Level.UNSPECIFIED, 23, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);
    builder.AddSymbol("ABCDE", SymbolType.SYMBOL_DATAMATRIX_SQUARE,
        Level.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED);

    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}

```

- Visual Basic .NET

```

Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddSymbol("ABCDE", SymbolType.SYMBOL_PDF417_STANDARD,
        Level.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddSymbol("ABCDE", SymbolType.SYMBOL_QRCODE_MODEL_2, Level.LEVEL_Q,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddSymbol("908063840\\x1d850\\x1d001\\x1d\\x04",
        SymbolType.SYMBOL_MAXICODE_MODE_2, Level.UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddSymbol("0201234567890", SymbolType.SYMBOL_GS1_DATABAR_STACKED,
        Level.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddSymbol("0201234567890",
        SymbolType.SYMBOL_GS1_DATABAR_STACKED_OMNIDIRECTIONAL,
        Level.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddSymbol("(01)02012345678903",
        SymbolType.SYMBOL_GS1_DATABAR_EXPANDED_STACKED,
        Level.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddSymbol("ABCDE", SymbolType.SYMBOL_AZTECCODE_FULLRANGE,
        Level.UNSPECIFIED, 23, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)
    builder.AddSymbol("ABCDE", SymbolType.SYMBOL_DATAMATRIX_SQUARE,
        Level.UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED, Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED,
        Builder.PARAM_UNSPECIFIED)

    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try

```



## AddPageBegin

Adds the switching to page mode to the command buffer. The page mode process starts.



Use this API function with [AddPageEnd \(p.107\)](#).

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void AddPageBegin();
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub AddPageBegin()
```

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

### Example

To print the characters "ABCDE" in page mode:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddPageBegin();
    builder.AddText("ABCDE");
    builder.AddPageEnd();
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddPageBegin()
    builder.AddText("ABCDE")
    builder.AddPageEnd()
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddPageEnd

Adds the end of page mode to the command buffer. The page mode process ends.



Use this API function with [AddPageBegin \(p.105\)](#).

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void AddPageEnd();
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub AddPageEnd()
```

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

### Example

To print the characters "ABCDE" in page mode:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddPageBegin();
    builder.AddText("ABCDE");
    builder.AddPageEnd();
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddPageBegin()
    builder.AddText("ABCDE")
    builder.AddPageEnd()
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddPageArea

Adds the print area in page mode to the command buffer.

Specifies the print area in page mode (coordinates). After this API function, specify a print data API function such as the AddText method.



- Specify a print area to cover the content to be printed. If the print data extends beyond the print area, the print result will be such that the print data has been printed incompletely.
- Use this API function by inserting it between [AddPageBegin \(p.105\)](#) and [AddPageEnd \(p.107\)](#).

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void AddPageArea(int x, int y,
                          int width, int height);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub AddPageArea
    (x As Integer, y As Integer,
     width As Integer, height As Integer)
```

### Parameter

- **x** : Specifies the origin of the horizontal axis (in dots). Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535. 0 is the left end of the printer's printable area.
- **y** : Specifies the origin of the vertical axis (in dots). Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535. 0 is the position in which no paper feed has been performed.
- **width** : Specifies the width of the print area (in dots). Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535.
- **height** : Specifies the height of the print area (in dots). Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535.



Determine the width and height of the print area according to the print direction setting. Otherwise, the print data might not be printed completely.

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

### Example

To specify the print area with the origin (100, 50), a width of 200 dots, and a height of 30 dots and print the characters "ABCDE":

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddPageBegin();
    builder.AddPageArea(100, 50, 200, 30);
    builder.AddText("ABCDE");
    builder.AddPageEnd();
    ///  

}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///  

    }
    ///  

}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddPageBegin()
    builder.AddPageArea(100, 50, 200, 30)
    builder.AddText("ABCDE")
    builder.AddPageEnd()
    `///  

Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///  

    End If
    `///  

End Try
```

## AddPageDirection

Adds the page mode print direction setting to the command buffer. Specifies the print direction in page mode. This function can be omitted if rotation is not required.



Use this API function by inserting it between [AddPageBegin \(p.105\)](#) and [AddPageEnd \(p.107\)](#).

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddPageDirection
           (LibEposPrint.Direction dir);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddPageDirection
           (dir As LibEposPrint.Direction)
```

### Parameter

- dir : Specifies the print direction in page mode.

| Set value                                      | Description  |
|--|--|
| Direction.DIRECTION_LEFT_TO_RIGHT<br>(default) | Left to right<br>(No rotation. Data is printed from the top left corner to the right.)                                 |
| Direction.DIRECTION_BOTTOM_TO_TOP              | Bottom to top<br>(Counterclockwise rotation by 90 degrees.<br>Data is printed from the bottom left corner to the top.) |
| Direction.DIRECTION_RIGHT_TO_LEFT              | Right to left<br>(Rotation by 180 degrees. Data is printed from the bottom right corner to the left.)                  |
| Direction.DIRECTION_TOP_TO_BOTTOM              | Top to bottom<br>(Clockwise rotation by 90 degrees.<br>Data is printed from the top right corner to the bottom.)       |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To print the characters "ABCDE" by rotating them 90 degrees clockwise:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddPageBegin();
    builder.AddPageArea(100, 50, 200, 30);
    builder.AddPageDirection(Direction.DIRECTION_TOP_TO_BOTTOM);
    builder.AddText("ABCDE");
    builder.AddPageEnd();
    ///  

}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///  

    }
    ///  

}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddPageBegin()
    builder.AddPageArea(100, 50, 200, 30)
    builder.AddPageDirection(Direction.DIRECTION_TOP_TO_BOTTOM)
    builder.AddText("ABCDE")
    builder.AddPageEnd()
    `///  

Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///  

    End If
    `///  

End Try
```



## AddPagePosition

Adds the page mode print-position-set area to the command buffer.

Specifies the print start position (coordinates) in the area specified by the AddPageArea method.



Use this API function by inserting it between [AddPageBegin \(p.105\)](#) and [AddPageEnd \(p.107\)](#).

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddPagePosition(int x, int y);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddPagePosition(x As Integer, y As Integer)
```

### Parameter

- **x** : Specifies the horizontal print position (in dots). Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535.
- **y** : Specifies the vertical print position (in dots). Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535.



Specify the print start position (coordinates) according to the content to be printed. Refer to the following.

- \* To print a character string:  
Specify the left end of the baseline for the first character. This can be omitted for left-aligned printing of standard-sized characters. To print double-sized height characters, specify a value equal to or greater than 42 for y.
- \* To print a barcode:  
Specify the bottom left of the symbol. And specify the barcode height for y.
- \* To print a graphic/logo:  
Specify the bottom left of the graphic data. And specify the graphic data height for y.
- \* To print a 2D-Code:  
Specify the top left of the symbol. This can be omitted when printing from the top left.

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

### Example

To specify (50,30) for the print start position in the area specified by the AddPageArea method and print the characters "ABCDE":

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddPageBegin();
    builder.AddPageArea(100, 50, 200, 100);
    builder.AddPagePosition(50, 30);
    builder.AddText("ABCDE");
    builder.AddPageEnd();
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddPageBegin()
    builder.AddPageArea(100, 50, 200, 30)
    builder.AddPagePosition(50, 30)
    builder.AddText("ABCDE")
    builder.AddPageEnd()
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddPageLine

Adds line drawing in page mode to the command buffer. Draws a line in page mode.



- Diagonal lines cannot be drawn.
- Use this API function by inserting it between [AddPageBegin \(p.105\)](#) and [AddPageEnd \(p.107\)](#).

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddPageLine(int x1, int y1, int x2, int y2,
                          LibEposPrint.Line style);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddPageLine(x1 As Integer, y1 As Integer,
                          x2 As Integer, y2 As Integer,
                          style As LibEposPrint.Line)
```

### Parameter

- **x1**: Specifies the horizontal start position of the line (in dots).  
Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535.
- **y1**: Specifies the vertical start position of the line (in dots).  
Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535.
- **x2**: Specifies the horizontal end position of the line (in dots).  
Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535.
- **y2**: Specifies the vertical end position of the line (in dots).  
Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535.
- **style**: Specifies the line type.

| Set value               | Description         |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| Line.LINE_THIN          | Solid line: Thin    |
| Line.LINE_MEDIUM        | Solid line: Medium  |
| Line.LINE_THICK         | Solid line: Thick   |
| Line.LINE_THIN_DOUBLE   | Double line: Thin   |
| Line.LINE_MEDIUM_DOUBLE | Double line: Medium |
| Line.LINE_THICK_DOUBLE  | Double line: Thick  |
| Line.DEFAULT            | Solid line: Thin    |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HResults occurs.

| HResult                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To draw a thin solid line between the start position (100, 0) and the end position (500, 0):

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddPageBegin();
    builder.AddPageLine(100, 0, 500, 0, Line.LINE_THIN);
    builder.AddPageEnd();
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddPageBegin()
    builder.AddPageLine(100, 0, 500, 0, Line.LINE_THIN)
    builder.AddPageEnd()
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddPageRectangle

Adds rectangle drawing in page mode to the command buffer. Draws a rectangle in page mode.



Use this API function by inserting it between [AddPageBegin \(p.105\)](#) and [AddPageEnd \(p.107\)](#).

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddPageRectangle
    (int x1, int y1, int x2,
     int y2, LibEposPrint.Line style);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddPageRectangle
    (x1 As Integer, y1 As Integer, x2 As Integer,
     y2 As Integer, style As LibEposPrint.Line)
```

### Parameter

- **x1:** Specifies the horizontal start position of the line (in dots). Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535.
- **y1:** Specifies the vertical start position of the line (in dots). Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535.
- **x2:** Specifies the horizontal end position of the line (in dots). Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535.
- **y2:** Specifies the vertical end position of the line (in dots). Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535.
- **style:** Specifies the line type.

| Set value               | Description         |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| Line.LINE_THIN          | Solid line: Thin    |
| Line.LINE_MEDIUM        | Solid line: Medium  |
| Line.LINE_THICK         | Solid line: Thick   |
| Line.LINE_THIN_DOUBLE   | Double line: Thin   |
| Line.LINE_MEDIUM_DOUBLE | Double line: Medium |
| Line.LINE_THICK_DOUBLE  | Double line: Thick  |
| Line.DEFAULT            | Solid line: Thin    |

## Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To draw a rectangle with a thin solid line, with the start position (100, 0) and the end position (500, 200) as its vertices:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddPageBegin();
    builder.AddPageRectangle(100, 0, 500, 200, Line.LINE_THIN);
    builder.AddPageEnd();
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddPageBegin()
    builder.AddPageRectangle(100, 0, 500, 200, Line.LINE_THIN)
    builder.AddPageEnd()
    \\\Process\\
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        \\\Process\\
    End If
    \\\Process\\
End Try
```

## AddCut

Adds paper cut to the command buffer. Sets paper cut.



Not available in page mode.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddCut(LibEposPrint.Cut type);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddCut(type As LibEposPrint.Cut)
```

### Parameter

- type : Specifies the paper cut type.

| Set value       | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| Cut.CUT_NO_FEED | Cut without feeding<br>(The paper is cut without being fed.)  |
| Cut.CUT_FEED    | Feed cut<br>(The paper is fed to the cut position and then is cut.)                                   |
| Cut.CUT_RESERVE | Cut reservation<br>(Printing continues until the cut position is reached, at which the paper is cut.) |
| Cut.DEFAULT     | Feed cut<br>(The paper is fed to the cut position and then is cut.)                                   |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To perform feed cut operation:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    ///Process///
    builder.AddCut(Cut.CUT_FEED);
    ///Process///
}
catch
(Exception ex) {
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    `///Process///
    builder.AddCut(Cut.CUT_FEED)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```



## AddPulse

Adds the drawer kick to the command buffer. Sets the drawer kick.



- Not available in page mode.
- The drawer and the buzzer cannot be used together.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddPulse(LibEposPrint.Drawer drawer,
                      LibEposPrint.Pulse time);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddPulse(drawer As LibEposPrint.Drawer,
                    time As LibEposPrint.Pulse)
```

### Parameter

- drawer : Specifies the drawer kick connector.

| Set value       | Description                            |
|-----------------|--|
| Drawer.DRAWER_1 | Pin 2 of the drawer kick-out connector |
| Drawer.DRAWER_2 | Pin 5 of the drawer kick-out connector |
| Drawer.DEFAULT  | Pin 2 of the drawer kick-out connector |

- time : Specifies the drawer kick signal energizing time.

| Set value       | Description |
|-----------------|-------------|
| Pulse.PULSE_100 | 100 ms      |
| Pulse.PULSE_200 | 200 ms      |
| Pulse.PULSE_300 | 300 ms      |
| Pulse.PULSE_400 | 400 ms      |
| Pulse.PULSE_500 | 500 ms      |
| Pulse.DEFAULT   | 100 ms      |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

### Example

To send a 100 msec pulse signal to the pin 2 of the drawer kick connector:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    ///Process///
    builder.AddPulse(Drawer.DRAWER_1, Pulse.PULSE_100);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    ` ///Process///
    builder.AddPulse(Drawer.DRAWER_1, Pulse.PULSE_100)
    ` ///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        ` ///Process///
    End If
    ` ///Process///
End Try
```

## AddSound

Adds the turning on of the buzzer to the command buffer. Sets the buzzer.



- Not available in page mode.
- The buzzer function and the drawer cannot be used together.
- This API function cannot be used if the printer is not provided with the buzzer.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void AddSound(LibEposPrint.Pattern pattern,
                      int repeat, int cycle);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub AddSound(pattern As LibEposPrint.Pattern,
                      repeat As Integer, cycle As Integer)
```

### Parameter

- pattern : Specifies the buzzer pattern.

| Set value                 | Description                                      |
|---------------------------|--|
| Pattern.PATTERN_A         | Pattern A (Optional Buzzer)                      |
| Pattern.PATTERN_B         | Pattern B (Optional Buzzer)                      |
| Pattern.PATTERN_C         | Pattern C (Optional Buzzer)                      |
| Pattern.PATTERN_D         | Pattern D (Optional Buzzer)                      |
| Pattern.PATTERN_E         | Pattern E (Optional Buzzer)                      |
| Pattern.PATTERN_ERROR     | Error sound pattern (Optional Buzzer)            |
| Pattern.PATTERN_PAPER_END | Pattern when there is no paper (Optional Buzzer) |
| Pattern.PATTERN_1         | Pattern 1 (Internal Buzzer)                      |
| Pattern.PATTERN_2         | Pattern 2 (Internal Buzzer)                      |
| Pattern.PATTERN_3         | Pattern 3 (Internal Buzzer)                      |
| Pattern.PATTERN_4         | Pattern 4 (Internal Buzzer)                      |
| Pattern.PATTERN_5         | Pattern 5 (Internal Buzzer)                      |
| Pattern.PATTERN_6         | Pattern 6 (Internal Buzzer)                      |
| Pattern.PATTERN_7         | Pattern 7 (Internal Buzzer)                      |
| Pattern.PATTERN_8         | Pattern 8 (Internal Buzzer)                      |
| Pattern.PATTERN_9         | Pattern 9 (Internal Buzzer)                      |
| Pattern.PATTERN_10        | Pattern 10 (Internal Buzzer)                     |
| Pattern.DEFAULT           | Pattern A (Internal Buzzer)                      |

- repeat : Specifies the number of repeats.

| Set value             | Description       |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1 to 255              | Number of repeats |
| Builder.PARAM_DEFAULT | One time          |

- cycle : This specifies the buzzer sounding cycle (in units of milliseconds).

| Set value             | Description                |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1000 to 25500         | 1000 to 25500 milliseconds |
| Builder.PARAM_DEFAULT | 1000 milliseconds          |



"Pattern A to E"/ "Error sound pattern"/"Pattern when there is no paper" is disregarded.

## Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

When sounding pattern 1 three times at 1,000 millisecond cycles:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    ///Process///
    builder.AddSound(Pattern.PATTERN_1, 3, 1000);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    `///Process///
    builder.AddSound(Pattern.PATTERN_1, 3, 1000)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddFeedPosition

Adds label / black mark paper feeding to the command buffer.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddFeedPosition
           (LibEposPrint.Feed position);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddFeedPosition
           (position As LibEposPrint.Feed)
```

### Parameter

- position : Specifies the feed position.

| Set value             | Description                            |
|-----------------------|--|
| Feed.FEED_PEELING     | Feeds to the peeling position.         |
| Feed.FEED_CUTTING     | Feeds to the cutting position.         |
| Feed.FEED_CURRENT_TOF | Feeds to the top of the current label. |
| Feed.FEED_NEXT_TOF    | Feeds to the top of the next label.    |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To feed a label paper to the peeling position:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-P60II", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    ///Process///
    builder.AddFeedPosition(Feed.FEED_PEELING);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-P60II", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    `///Process///
    builder.AddFeedPosition(Feed.FEED_PEELING)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## AddLayout

Adds label / black mark paper layout information to the command buffer.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public void AddLayout(LibEposPrint.Layout type,
                        int width, int height,
                        int marginTop, int marginBottom,
                        int offsetCut, int offsetLabel);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub AddLayout
    (type As LibEposPrint.Layout,
    width As Integer, height As Integer,
    marginTop As Integer,
    marginBottom As Integer,
    offsetCut As Integer,
    offsetLabel As Integer)
```

### Parameter

- type : Specifies the paper type.

| Set value                | Description                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Layout.LAYOUT_RECEIPT    | Receipt paper (no black mark)   |
| Layout.LAYOUT_LABEL      | Label paper (no black mark)     |
| Layout.LAYOUT_LABEL_BM   | Label paper (with black mark)   |
| Layout.LAYOUT_RECEIPT_BM | Receipt paper (with black mark) |

- width : Specifies paper width (in units of 0.1 mm). Specifies an integer from 1 to 10000.
- height : Specifies the distance (in units of 0.1 mm) from the standard printing position to the next standard printing position. Specifies an integer from 0 to 10000.  
If "0" is specified, the distance from the standard printing position to the next standard printing position is detected automatically.
- marginTop : Specifies the distance (in units of 0.1 mm) from the standard printing position to the top position. Specifies an integer from -9999 to 10000.
- marginBottom : Specifies the distance (in units of 0.1 mm) from the standard eject position to the bottom edge of the printable area. Specifies an integer from -9999 to 10000.
- offsetCut : Specifies the distance (in units of 0.1 mm) from the standard eject position to the cutting position. Specifies an integer from -9999 to 10000.
- offsetLabel : Specifies the distance (in units of 0.1 mm) from the standard eject position to the bottom edge of the label. Specifies an integer from 0 to 10000.

## Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To set 60 mm label paper (black mark):

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-P60II", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddLayout(Layout.LAYOUT_LABEL_BM, 600, 0, 15, -15, 15, 0);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

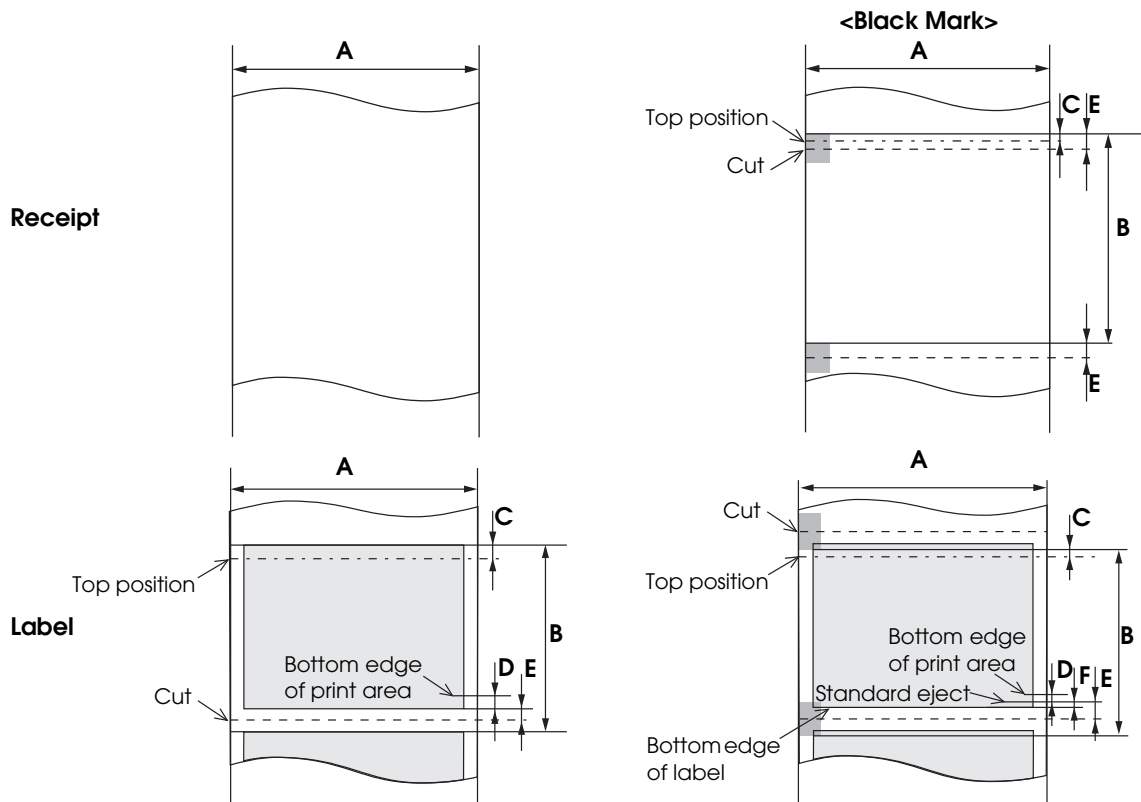
- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-P60II", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddLayout(Layout.LAYOUT_LABEL_BM, 600, 0, 15, -15, 15, 0)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```



### Detailed description

- See below for the parameters that can be specified for each type of paper, and the positions for those parameters.



| Mark | Parameter    | Set value  |                      |            |                    |
|------|--------------|------------|----------------------|------------|--------------------|
|      |              | Receipt    | Receipt (Black mark) | Label      | Label (Black mark) |
| A    | width        | 1 to 10000 | 1 to 10000           | 1 to 10000 | 1 to 10000         |
| B    | height       | 0          | 0 to 10000           | 0 to 10000 | 0 to 10000         |
| C    | marginTop    | 0          | -9999 to 10000       | 0 to 10000 | -9999 to 10000     |
| D    | marginBottom | 0          | 0                    | -9999 to 0 | -9999 to 10000     |
| E    | offsetCut    | 0          | -9999 to 10000       | 0 to 10000 | 0 to 10000         |
| F    | offsetLabel  | 0          | 0                    | 0          | 0 to 10000         |

## AddCommand

Adds commands to the command buffer. Sends ESC/POS commands.



Refer to the following URL for details of the ESC/POS command.  
[https://reference.epson-biz.com/modules/ref\\_escpos/index.php?content\\_id=2](https://reference.epson-biz.com/modules/ref_escpos/index.php?content_id=2)

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void AddCommand(byte[] data);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub AddCommand(data() As Byte)
```

### Parameter

- data : Specifies ESC/POS command as a binary data.

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                          | Description                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.     |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | An unspecified error occurred. |

### Example

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    byte[] data = null;
    ///Process///
    builder.AddCommand(data);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    Dim data As Byte() = Nothing
    \\\\Process\\
    builder.AddCommand(data)
    \\\\Process\\
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        \\\\Process\\
    End If
    \\\\Process\\
End Try
```

## Print class (Constructor)

Constructor for the Print class. Initializes a Print class instance.

---

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public Print()
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Sub Print()
```

### Example

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Print printer = new Print();
    ///  

}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    ///  

}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()
    `///  

Catch ex As Exception
    `///  

End Try
```

## OpenPrinterAsync

This starts communications with the printer and monitoring of printer status.



if communication with the printer is not required anymore, be sure to call [ClosePrinterAsync \(p.139\)](#), `ClosePrinterAsync` API, to end communication with the printer.



- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.
- When a printer is connected, a connection confirmation screen may appear. Execute this API from a UI thread.
- Printer status is notified to the events registered in the print class.  
For details, see [Automatic Acquisition of Printer Status \(p.42\)](#).
- If you want to stop monitoring of printer status, call [ClosePrinterAsync \(p.139\)](#).
- For connection via *Bluetooth®*, execute this API when devices are paired.
- If you use the printer from multiple mobile terminals, see the [Cautions \(p.237\)](#).

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction OpenPrinterAsync
    (LibEposPrint.DevType deviceType,
     System.String deviceName,
     LibEposPrint.Monitoring enabled,
     int interval, int timeout);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Function OpenPrinterAsync
    (deviceType As LibEposPrint.DevType,
     deviceName As String,
     enabled As LibEposPrint.Monitoring,
     interval As Integer, timeout As Integer)
    As Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction
```

### Parameter

- `deviceType` : Specifies the type for the device to start communication.

| Set value                              | Description              |
|--|--------------------------|
| <code>DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP</code>       | Wi-Fi/Ethernet device    |
| <code>DevType.DEVTYPE_BLUETOOTH</code> | <i>Bluetooth®</i> device |

- **deviceName** : Specifies the identifier used for identification of the target device.  
Specifies the following for each device type:

| deviceType                | Specified Value   |
|---------------------------|---|
| DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP       | One of the following can be specified. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IPv4 IP address (Example: "192.168.192.168")</li> <li>• MAC address (Example: "01:23:45:67:89:AB")</li> <li>• Printer host name (Arbitrary string)</li> </ul> |
| DevType.DEVTYPE_BLUETOOTH | BD address (Example: "01:23:45:67:89:AB")   |



- When a printer's IP address is set as DHCP, specify a MAC address or printer host name for deviceName.
- When DevType.DEVTYPE\_TCP is selected for deviceType, and a printer host name is specified for deviceName, use in an environment in which it is possible to search for a printer host name from the DNS server.

- **enabled** : This specifies whether printer status monitoring is enabled or disabled.

| Set value                       | Specified Value                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Monitoring.<br>MONITORING_TRUE  | Enabled                         |
| Monitoring.<br>MONITORING_FALSE | Disabled                        |
| Monitoring.DEFAULT              | Select default value (disabled) |

- **interval** : This specifies the interval (in units of milliseconds) for updating printer status.

| Set value             | Specified Value   |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1000 to 60000 integer | Interval for updating printer status (in units of milliseconds) |
| Print.PARAM_DEFAULT   | Specify the default value (1000)                                |

- **timeout** : This specifies the maximum waiting time (in milliseconds) for establishing communication with the printer.

| Set value              | Specified Value                                  |
|------------------------|--|
| 1000 to 300000 integer | Maximum waiting time until an error is returned. |
| Print.PARAM_DEFAULT    | Specify the default value (15000)                |



- If the specified device does not exist, an error is returned immediately.
- When DevType.DEVTYPE\_TCP is specified for deviceType, if the specified device is already used, an attempt is made to execute this API until the timeout time.
- For *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> communication, specify Print.PARAM\_DEFAULT.

## Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                           | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)   | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_ACCESSDENIED<br>(0x80070005) | Open processing failed.  |
| HR_E_ABORT<br>(0x80004004)        | The device specified was already being used, and communication with the printer could not be established within the timeout time.  |
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A)      | Could not execute process.   |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E)  | Could not allocate memory.   |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An attempt was made to start communicating with the device with which communication had already started.</li> <li>An unspecified error occurred.</li> </ul> |

### Example

Case where printer status monitoring is enabled and communications are commenced using Wi-Fi/Ethernet and a printer with an IP address of 192.168.192.168:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Print printer = new Print();
    await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
        Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT,
        Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()
    Await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
        Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT,
        Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## OpenPrinterAsync(Previous format)

This starts communications with the printer and monitoring of printer status.



if communication with the printer is not required anymore, be sure to call [ClosePrinterAsync \(p.139\)](#), [ClosePrinterAsync](#) API, to end communication with the printer.



- The timeout time for this API cannot be set. If you want to set the timeout time for this API, use [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.
- When a printer is connected, a connection confirmation screen may appear. Execute this API from a UI thread.
- Printer status is notified to the events registered in the print class.  
For details, see [Automatic Acquisition of Printer Status \(p.42\)](#).
- If you want to stop monitoring of printer status, call [ClosePrinterAsync \(p.139\)](#).
- For connection via *Bluetooth®*, execute this API when devices are paired.]
- If you use the printer from multiple mobile terminals, see the [Cautions \(p.237\)](#).

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction OpenPrinterAsync
    (LibEposPrint.DevType deviceType,
     System.String deviceName,
     LibEposPrint.Monitoring enabled,
     int interval);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Function OpenPrinterAsync
    (deviceType As LibEposPrint.DevType,
     deviceName As String,
     enabled As LibEposPrint.Monitoring,
     interval As Integer)
    As Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction
```

### Parameter

- `deviceType` : Specifies the type for the device to start communication.

| Set value                              | Description              |
|--|--------------------------|
| <code>DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP</code>       | Wi-Fi/Ethernet device    |
| <code>DevType.DEVTYPE_BLUETOOTH</code> | <i>Bluetooth®</i> device |



- **deviceName** : Specifies the identifier used for identification of the target device.  
Specifies the following for each device type:

| deviceType                | Specified Value   |
|---------------------------|---|
| DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP       | One of the following can be specified. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IPv4 IP address (Example: "192.168.192.168")</li> <li>• MAC address (Example: "01:23:45:67:89:AB")</li> <li>• Printer host name (Arbitrary string)</li> </ul> |
| DevType.DEVTYPE_BLUETOOTH | BD address (Example: "01:23:45:67:89:AB")   |



- When a printer's IP address is set as DHCP, specify a MAC address or printer host name for deviceName.
- When DevType.DEVTYPE\_TCP is selected for deviceType, and a printer host name is specified for deviceName, use in an environment in which it is possible to search for a printer host name from the DNS server.

- **enabled** : This specifies whether printer status monitoring is enabled or disabled.

| Set value                       | Specified Value                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Monitoring.<br>MONITORING_TRUE  | Enabled                         |
| Monitoring.<br>MONITORING_FALSE | Disabled                        |
| Monitoring.DEFAULT              | Select default value (disabled) |

- **interval** : This specifies the interval (in units of milliseconds) for updating printer status.

| Set value             | Specified Value   |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1000 to 60000 integer | Interval for updating printer status (in units of milliseconds) |
| Print.PARAM_DEFAULT   | Specify the default value (1000)                                |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                           | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)   | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_ACCESSDENIED<br>(0x80070005) | Open processing failed.  |
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A)      | Could not execute process.   |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E)  | Could not allocate memory.   |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An attempt was made to start communicating with the device with which communication had already started.</li> <li>• An unspecified error occurred.</li> </ul> |

### Example

Case where printer status monitoring is enabled and communications are commenced using Wi-Fi/Ethernet and a printer with an IP address of 192.168.192.168:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Print printer = new Print();
    await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
        Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);
    ///Process///
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()
    Await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
        Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
    `///Process///
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## ClosePrinterAsync

This ends communications with the printer and monitoring of printer status.



- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction
    ClosePrinterAsync() ;
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Function ClosePrinterAsync()
    As Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction
```

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                      | Description   |
|------------------------------|---|
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A) | Could not execute process.  |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This API was called when communication had not started yet.</li> <li>• An unspecified error occurred.</li> </ul> |

### Example

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Print printer = new Print();
    await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
        Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);
    ///Process///
    await printer.ClosePrinterAsync();
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()
    Await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
        Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
    ` ///Process///
    Await printer.ClosePrinterAsync()
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        ` ///Process///
    End If
    ` ///Process///
End Try
```

## SendDataAsync

Sends a print document created using the Builder class.



- If you are using a *Bluetooth*® connection, it may not be able to detect the offline status, and timeout errors may occur.
- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.
- If you use the printer from multiple mobile terminals, see the [Cautions \(p.237\)](#).

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public Windows.Foundation.IAsyncOperation
    <PrinterStatus> SendDataAsync
    (LibEposPrint.Builder builder, int timeout);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Function SendDataAsync
    (builder As LibEposPrint.Builder, timeout As Integer)
    As Windows.Foundation.IAsyncOperation
    (Of LibEposPrint.PrinterStatus)
```

### Parameter

- **builder** : Specifies a Builder class instance. For details on the Builder class, refer to [Builder class \(p.51\)](#).
- **timeout** : Specifies the transmission/reception waiting timeout time. Adjust the timeout time according to the specifications for the model, communication interface, and transmission data size.  
Specifies an integer in the range 0-600000 (in milliseconds).



The timeout time specified for timeout is a period of time between print document transmission and printer status acquisition.

## Return value

The printer status and the battery status return.

- The printer status returns to `PrinterStatus.printerStatus`.  
For details on the printer status, see [Printer Statuses and Actions to Take \(p.47\)](#).
- The battery status returns to `PrinterStatus.batteryStatus`.  
For details on the battery status, see [Battery Status \(p.49\)](#).

The printer status and battery status to be returned vary depending on the printer status monitoring setting for [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).

| Printer status monitoring setting | Description   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| MONITORING_TRUE                   | The printer status and battery status monitored last return.  |
| MONITORING_FALSE                  | The printer status when the print document has been sent returns.<br>If the printer status fails to be acquired, <code>ST_NO_RESPONSE</code> returns as the printer status and <code>0x0000</code> returns as the battery status. |



When an exception occurs, the printer status and the battery status are acquired using [GetPrinterStatus \(p.178\)](#) during exception processing.

## Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                           | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)   | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A)      | Could not execute process.   |
| HR_E_ABORT<br>(0x80004004)        | Could not send all the data within the specified time.   |
| HR_E_ACCESSDENIED<br>(0x80070005) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Connection error occurred.</li><li>• The printer was offline.</li></ul>  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E)  | Could not allocate memory.   |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This API was called when communication had not started yet.</li><li>• An unspecified error occurred.</li></ul> |



If `HR_E_ACCESSDENIED` occurs, whether the printer is offline is identified by checking the printer status. When "`ST_NO_RESPONSE`" is not set and is set "`ST_OFF_LINE`" as the printer status, the printer is offline.

### Example

To send a command to the printer by specifying 10 seconds for its timeout parameter:

- Visual C#

```

Print printer = new Print();
PrinterStatus status;
status.printerStatus = 0;
status.batteryStatus = 0;

try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    builder.AddText("ABCDE\n");

    await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
        Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

    status = await printer.SendDataAsync(builder, 10000);

    ///Process///

    await printer.ClosePrinterAsync();
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    PrinterStatus errStatus = printer.GetPrinterStatus(ex.HResult);
    ///Process///
}

```

- Visual Basic .NET

```

Dim printer As Print = New Print()
Dim status As PrinterStatus
status.printerStatus = 0
status.batteryStatus = 0

Try

    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddText("ABCDE" + vbCrLf)

    status = Await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP,
        "192.168.192.168", Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
        Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
    status = Await printer.SendDataAsync(builder, 10000)

    `///Process///

    Await printer.ClosePrinterAsync()
Catch ex As Exception
    Dim errStatus As PrinterStatus = printer.GetPrinterStatus(ex.HResult)
    `///Process///
End Try

```

## BeginTransactionAsync

Starts transaction.

Transaction indicates a set of print processing operations, such as printing a sheet of receipt or a coupon. The operation from just after calling this API to when the transaction finishes using [EndTransactionAsync \(p.146\)](#) is handled as one set of print processing operations.



- For details about specifying a transaction, see the [To specify a transaction \(p.239\)](#).
- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction  
    BeginTransactionAsync() ;
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Function BeginTransactionAsync() As  
    Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction
```

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                      | Description   |
|------------------------------|---|
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A) | This API was called when communication had not started yet.<br>Transaction has already started using this function. |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)    | An unspecified error occurred.  |



### Example

Multiple or one print processing is transacted:

- Visual C#

```

Print printer = new Print();
PrinterStatus status;
status.printerStatus = 0;
status.batteryStatus = 0;

try {
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    Builder builder2 = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);

    builder.AddText("ABCDE\n");

    builder2.AddText("12345\n");
    builder2.AddCut(CUT_FEED);

    await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                   Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

    await printer.BeginTransactionAsync();

    status = await printer.SendDataAsync(builder, 10000);
    status = await printer.SendDataAsync(builder2, 10000);

    await printer.EndTransactionAsync();

    ///Process///
    await printer.ClosePrinterAsync();
} catch(Exception ex) {
    PrinterStatus errStatus = printer.GetPrinterStatus(ex.HResult);
    ///Process///
}

```

- Visual Basic .NET

```

Dim printer As Print = New Print()
Dim status As PrinterStatus
status.printerStatus = 0
status.batteryStatus = 0
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    Dim builder2 As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)

    builder.AddText("ABCDE" + vbCrLf)

    builder2.AddText("12345" + vbCrLf)
    builder2.AddCut(CUT_FEED)

    Await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                   Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)

    Await printer.BeginTransactionAsync()
    status = Await printer.SendDataAsync(builder, 10000)
    status = Await printer.SendDataAsync(builder2, 10000)
    Await printer.EndTransactionAsync()

    '///Process///
    Await printer.ClosePrinterAsync()
Catch ex As Exception
    Dim errStatus As PrinterStatus = printer.GetPrinterStatus(ex.HResult)
    '///Process///
End Try

```

## EndTransactionAsync

Finishes transaction.

Transaction indicates a set of print processing operations, such as printing a sheet of receipt or a coupon. The operation from just after calling [BeginTransactionAsync \(p.144\)](#) to when the transaction finishes using this API is handled as one set of print processing operations.



- For details about specifying a transaction, see the [To specify a transaction \(p.239\)](#).
- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction  
    EndTransactionAsync() ;
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Function EndTransactionAsync() As  
    Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction
```

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                      | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A) | This API was called when communication had not started yet.<br>This API was called when transaction had not started. |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)    | An unspecified error occurred.   |

### Example

Multiple or one print processing is transacted:

- Visual C#

```

Print printer = new Print();
PrinterStatus status;
status.printerStatus = 0;
status.batteryStatus = 0;

try {
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    Builder builder2 = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);

    builder.AddText("ABCDE\n");

    builder2.AddText("12345\n");
    builder2.AddCut(CUT_FEED);

    await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                   Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

    await printer.BeginTransactionAsync();

    status = await printer.SendDataAsync(builder, 10000);
    status = await printer.SendDataAsync(builder2, 10000);

    await printer.EndTransactionAsync();

    ///Process///
    await printer.ClosePrinterAsync();
} catch(Exception ex) {
    PrinterStatus errStatus = printer.GetPrinterStatus(ex.HResult);
    ///Process///
}

```

- Visual Basic .NET

```

Dim printer As Print = New Print()
Dim status As PrinterStatus
status.printerStatus = 0
status.batteryStatus = 0
Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    Dim builder2 As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)

    builder.AddText("ABCDE" + vbCrLf)

    builder2.AddText("12345" + vbCrLf)
    builder2.AddCut(CUT_FEED)

    Await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                   Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)

    Await printer.BeginTransactionAsync()
    status = Await printer.SendDataAsync(builder, 10000)
    status = Await printer.SendDataAsync(builder2, 10000)
    Await printer.EndTransactionAsync()

    '///Process///
    Await printer.ClosePrinterAsync()
Catch ex As Exception
    Dim errStatus As PrinterStatus = printer.GetPrinterStatus(ex.HResult)
    '///Process///
End Try

```

## SetStatusChangeEventCallback

This registers the notification destination of printer status.



- This API can be executed following execution of [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- When this API is executed on multiple occasions, the notification destination that is specified afterwards is overwritten.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void SetStatusChangeEventCallback  
(LibEposPrint.StatusChangeEvent target);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub SetStatusChangeEventCallback  
(target As LibEposPrint.StatusChangeEvent)
```

### Parameter

- target : This specifies the object that has the notification destination method (definition of call-back method).

To cancel the registration of the notification destination, specify as follows:

| Development Language | Code    |
|----------------------|---------|
| Visual C#            | null    |
| Visual Basic .NET    | Nothing |

### Definition of Callback Method

Visual C#

```
void Method name(String deviceName, int status)
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Sub Method name(deviceName As String, status As Integer)
```

### Parameter

- deviceName : The identifier (IPv4 type IP address/ BD address/ Device node/ Printer host name) of the device that is notified of printer status is set.
- status : Printer status is set.

**Example**

- Visual C#

```
private void Status_Change_Event(string deviceName, int status)
{
    ///Process///
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    Print printer = new Print();
    StatusChangeEvent statusChangeEvent
        = new StatusChangeEvent(Status_Change_Event);
    printer.SetStatusChangeEventCallback(statusChangeEvent);

    try
    {
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
            Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
            Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Private Sub Status_Change_Event(deviceName As String, status As Integer)
    '///Process///
End Sub

Private Async Sub openPrinter()
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()

    Dim statusChangeEvent As StatusChangeEvent
        = New StatusChangeEvent(AddressOf statusChangeEvent)
    printer.SetStatusChangeEventCallback(statusChangeEvent)

    Try
        Await printer.OpenPrintAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
            Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
        '///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        if ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            '///Process///
        End If
    End Try
End Sub
```

## SetOnlineEventCallback

This registers the notification destination of online events. This refers to events that are notified when printer status is online.



- This API can be executed following execution of [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- When this API is executed on multiple occasions, the notification destination that is specified afterwards is overwritten.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void SetOnlineEventCallback  
(LibEposPrint.OnlineEvent target);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub SetOnlineEventCallback  
(target As LibEposPrint.OnlineEvent)
```

### Parameter

- target : This specifies the object that has the notification destination method (definition of call-back method).  
To cancel the registration of the notification destination, specify as follows:

| Development Language | Code    |
|----------------------|---------|
| Visual C#            | null    |
| Visual Basic .NET    | Nothing |

### Definition of Callback Method

Visual C#

```
void Method name(String deviceName)
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Sub Method name(deviceName As String)
```

### Parameter

- deviceName : The identifier (IPv4 type IP address/ BD address/ Device node/ Printer host name) of the device that is notified of printer status is set.

**Example**

- Visual C#

```
private void Online_Event(string deviceName)
{
    ///Process///
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    Print printer = new Print();

    OnlineEvent onlineEvent = new OnlineEvent(Online_Event);
    printer.SetOnlineEventCallback(onlineEvent);

    try
    {
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
                                         Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Private Sub Online_Event(deviceName As String)
    '///Process///
End Sub

Private Async Sub openPrinter()
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()

    Dim onlineEvent As OnlineEvent = New OnlineEvent(AddressOf Online_Event)
    printer.SetOnlineEventCallback(onlineEvent)

    Try
        Await printer.OpenPrintAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
        '///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        if ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            '///Process///
        End If
    End Try
End Sub
```

## SetOfflineEventCallback

This registers the notification destination of offline events. This is the notification method when printer is offline concerning printer status.



- This API can be executed following execution of [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- When this API is executed on multiple occasions, the notification destination that is specified afterwards is overwritten.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void SetOfflineEventCallback  
(LibEposPrint.OfflineEvent target);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub SetOfflineEventCallback  
(target As LibEposPrint.OfflineEvent)
```

### Parameter

- target : This specifies the object that has the notification destination method (definition of call-back method).  
To cancel the registration of the notification destination, specify as follows:

| Development Language | Code    |
|----------------------|---------|
| Visual C#            | null    |
| Visual Basic .NET    | Nothing |

### Definition of Callback Method

Visual C#

```
void Method name(String deviceName)
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Sub Method name(deviceName As String)
```

### Parameter

- deviceName : The identifier (IPv4 type IP address/ BD address/ Device node/ Printer host name) of the device that is notified of printer status is set.



**Example**

- Visual C#

```
private void Offline_Event(string deviceName)
{
    ///Process///
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    Print printer = new Print();

    OfflineEvent offlineEvent = new OfflineEvent(Offline_Event);
    printer.SetOfflineEventCallback(offlineEvent);

    try
    {
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
                                         Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Private Sub Offline_Event(deviceName As String)
    '///Process///
End Sub

Private Async Sub openPrinter()
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()

    Dim offlineEvent As OfflineEvent = New OfflineEvent(AddressOf Offline_Event)
    printer.SetOfflineEventCallback(offlineEvent)

    Try
        Await printer.OpenPrintAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
        '///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        if ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            '///Process///
        End If
    End Try
End Sub
```

## SetPowerOffEventCallback

This registers the notification destination of power off events. This refers to events that are notified when there is no response concerning printer status.



- This API can be executed following execution of [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- When this API is executed on multiple occasions, the notification destination that is specified afterwards is overwritten.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void SetPowerOffEventCallback  
(LibEposPrint.PowerOffEvent target);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub SetPowerOffEventCallback  
(target As LibEposPrint.PowerOffEvent)
```

### Parameter

- target : This specifies the object that has the notification destination method (definition of call-back method).  
To cancel the registration of the notification destination, specify as follows:

| Development Language | Code    |
|----------------------|---------|
| Visual C#            | null    |
| Visual Basic .NET    | Nothing |

### Definition of Callback Method

Visual C#

```
void Method name(String deviceName)
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Sub Method name(deviceName As String)
```

### Parameter

- deviceName : The identifier (IPv4 type IP address/ BD address/ Device node/ Printer host name) of the device that is notified of printer status is set.

**Example**

- Visual C#

```
private void Power_Off_Event(string deviceName)
{
    ///Process///
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    Print printer = new Print();

    PowerOffEvent powerOffEvent = new PowerOffEvent(Power_Off_Event);
    printer.SetPowerOffEventCallback(powerOffEvent);

    try
    {
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
                                         Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Private Sub Power_Off_Event(deviceName As String)
    '///Process///
End Sub

Private Async Sub openPrinter()
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()

    Dim powerOffEvent As PowerOffEvent
        = New PowerOffEvent(AddressOf Power_Off_Event)
    printer.SetPowerOffEventCallback(powerOffEvent)

    Try
        Await printer.OpenPrintAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
        '///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        if ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            '///Process///
        End If
    End Try
End Sub
```

## SetCoverOkEventCallback

This registers the notification destination of cover close events. This refers to events that are notified when printer status indicates cover close.



- This API can be executed following execution of [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- When this API is executed on multiple occasions, the notification destination that is specified afterwards is overwritten.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void SetCoverOkEventCallback  
    (LibEposPrint.CoverOkEvent target);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub SetCoverOkEventCallback  
    (target As LibEposPrint.CoverOkEvent)
```

### Parameter

- target : This specifies the object that has the notification destination method (definition of call-back method).  
To cancel the registration of the notification destination, specify as follows:

| Development Language | Code    |
|----------------------|---------|
| Visual C#            | null    |
| Visual Basic .NET    | Nothing |

### Definition of Callback Method

Visual C#

```
void Method name(String deviceName)
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Sub Method name(deviceName As String)
```

### Parameter

- deviceName : The identifier (IPv4 type IP address/ BD address/ Device node/ Printer host name) of the device that is notified of printer status is set.

**Example**

- Visual C#

```
private void Cover_Ok_Event(string deviceName)
{
    ///Process///
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    Print printer = new Print();

    CoverOkEvent coverOkEvent = new CoverOkEvent(Cover_Ok_Event);
    printer.SetCoverOkEventCallback(coverOkEvent);

    try
    {
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
                                         Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Private Sub Cover_Ok_Event(deviceName As String)
    '///Process///
End Sub

Private Async Sub openPrinter()
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()

    Dim coverOkEvent As CoverOkEvent = New CoverOkEvent(AddressOf Cover_Ok_Event)
    printer.SetCoverOkEventCallback(coverOkEvent)

    Try
        Await printer.OpenPrintAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
        '///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        if ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            '///Process///
        End If
    End Try
End Sub
```

## SetCoverOpenEventCallback

This registers the notification destination of cover open events. This refers to events that are notified when the cover is open concerning printer status.



- This API can be executed following execution of [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- When this API is executed on multiple occasions, the notification destination that is specified afterwards is overwritten.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void SetCoverOpenEventCallback  
(LibEposPrint.CoverOpenEvent target);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub SetCoverOpenEventCallback  
(target As LibEposPrint.CoverOpenEvent)
```

### Parameter

- target : This specifies the object that has the notification destination method (definition of call-back method).  
To cancel the registration of the notification destination, specify as follows:

| Development Language | Code    |
|----------------------|---------|
| Visual C#            | null    |
| Visual Basic .NET    | Nothing |

### Definition of Callback Method

Visual C#

```
void Method name(String deviceName)
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Sub Method name(deviceName As String)
```

### Parameter

- deviceName : The identifier (IPv4 type IP address/ BD address/ Device node/ Printer host name) of the device that is notified of printer status is set.

**Example**

- Visual C#

```
private void Cover_Open_Event(string deviceName)
{
    ///Process///
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    Print printer = new Print();

    CoverOpenEvent coverOpenEvent = new CoverOpenEvent(Cover_Open_Event);
    printer.SetCoverOpenEventCallback(coverOpenEvent);

    try
    {
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
                                         Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Private Sub Cover_Open_Event(deviceName As String)
    '///Process///
End Sub

Private Async Sub openPrinter()
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()

    Dim coverOpenEvent As CoverOpenEvent
        = New CoverOpenEvent(AddressOf Cover_Open_Event)
    printer.SetCoverOpenEventCallback(coverOpenEvent)

    Try
        Await printer.OpenPrintAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
        '///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            '///Process///
        End If
    End Try
End Sub
```

## SetPaperOkEventCallback

This registers the notification destination of paper OK events. This refers to events that are notified when printer status indicates paper OK.



- This API can be executed following execution of [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- When this API is executed on multiple occasions, the notification destination that is specified afterwards is overwritten.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void SetPaperOkEventCallback  
    (LibEposPrint.PaperOkEvent target);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub SetPaperOkEventCallback  
    (target As LibEposPrint.PaperOkEvent)
```

### Parameter

- target : This specifies the object that has the notification destination method (definition of call-back method).  
To cancel the registration of the notification destination, specify as follows:

| Development Language | Code    |
|----------------------|---------|
| Visual C#            | null    |
| Visual Basic .NET    | Nothing |

### Definition of Callback Method

Visual C#

```
void Method name(String deviceName)
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Sub Method name(deviceName As String)
```

### Parameter

- deviceName : The identifier (IPv4 type IP address/ BD address/ Device node/ Printer host name) of the device that is notified of printer status is set.



**Example**

- Visual C#

```
private void Paper_Ok_Event(string deviceName)
{
    ///Process///
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    Print printer = new Print();

    PaperOkEvent paperOkEvent = new PaperOkEvent(Paper_Ok_Event);
printer.SetPaperOkEventCallback(paperOkEvent);

    try
    {
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
                                         Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Private Sub Paper_Ok_Event(deviceName As String)
'///Process///
End Sub

Private Async Sub openPrinter()
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()

    Dim paperOkEvent As PaperOkEvent = New PaperOkEvent(AddressOf Paper_Ok_Event)
printer.SetPaperOkEventCallback(paperOkEvent)

    Try
        Await printer.OpenPrintAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
        '///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        if ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            '///Process///
        End If
    '///Process///
    End Try
End Sub
```

## SetPaperNearEndEventCallback

This registers the notification destination of paper near end events. This refers to events that are notified when printer status indicates paper is near the end.



- This API can be executed following execution of [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- When this API is executed on multiple occasions, the notification destination that is specified afterwards is overwritten.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void SetPaperNearEndEventCallback  
(LibEposPrint.PaperNearEndEvent target);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub SetPaperNearEndEventCallback  
(target As LibEposPrint.PaperNearEndEvent)
```

### Parameter

- target : This specifies the object that has the notification destination method (definition of call-back method).

To cancel the registration of the notification destination, specify as follows:

| Development Language | Code    |
|----------------------|---------|
| Visual C#            | null    |
| Visual Basic .NET    | Nothing |

### Definition of Callback Method

Visual C#

```
void Method name(String deviceName)
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Sub Method name(deviceName As String)
```

### Parameter

- deviceName : The identifier (IPv4 type IP address/ BD address/ Device node/ Printer host name) of the device that is notified of printer status is set.

**Example**

- Visual C#

```
private void Paper_Near_End_Event(string deviceName)
{
    ///Process///
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    Print printer = new Print();

    PaperNearEndEvent paperNearEndEvent
        = new PaperNearEndEvent(Paper_Near_End_Event);
    printer.SetPaperNearEndEventCallback(paperNearEndEvent);

    try
    {
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
            Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
            Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Private Sub Paper_Near_End_Event(deviceName As String)
    '///Process///
End Sub

Private Async Sub openPrinter()
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()

    Dim paperNearEndEvent As PaperNearEndEvent
        = New PaperNearEndEvent(AddressOf Paper_Near_End_Event)
    printer.SetPaperNearEndEventCallback(paperNearEndEvent)

    Try
        Await printer.OpenPrintAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
            Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
        '///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        if ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            '///Process///
        End If
    End Try
End Sub
```

## SetPaperEndEventCallback

This registers the notification destination of paper end events. This refers to events that are notified when printer status indicates there is no paper.



- This API can be executed following execution of [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- When this API is executed on multiple occasions, the notification destination that is specified afterwards is overwritten.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void SetPaperEndEventCallback  
(LibEposPrint.PaperEndEvent target);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub SetPaperEndEventCallback  
(target As LibEposPrint.PaperEndEvent)
```

### Parameter

- target : This specifies the object that has the notification destination method (definition of call-back method).  
To cancel the registration of the notification destination, specify as follows:

| Development Language | Code    |
|----------------------|---------|
| Visual C#            | null    |
| Visual Basic .NET    | Nothing |

### Definition of Callback Method

Visual C#

```
void Method name(String deviceName)
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Sub Method name(deviceName As String)
```

### Parameter

- deviceName : The identifier (IPv4 type IP address/ BD address/ Device node/ Printer host name) of the device that is notified of printer status is set.

**Example**

- Visual C#

```
private void Paper_End_Event(string deviceName)
{
    ///Process///
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    Print printer = new Print();

    PaperEndEvent paperEndEvent = new PaperEndEvent(Paper_End_Event);
    printer.SetPaperEndEventCallback(paperEndEvent);

    try
    {
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
                                         Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Private Sub Paper_End_Event(deviceName As String)
    '///Process///
End Sub

Private Async Sub openPrinter()
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()

    Dim paperEndEvent As PaperEndEvent
        = New PaperEndEvent(AddressOf Paper_End_Event)
    printer.SetPaperEndEventCallback(paperEndEvent)

    Try
        Await printer.OpenPrintAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
        '///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        if ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            '///Process///
        End If
    End Try
End Sub
```

## SetDrawerClosedEventCallback

This registers the notification destination of drawer closed events. This refers to events that are notified when printer status indicates the drawer is closed.



- This API can be executed following execution of [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- When this API is executed on multiple occasions, the notification destination that is specified afterwards is overwritten.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void SetDrawerClosedEventCallback  
(LibEposPrint.DrawerClosedEvent target);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub SetDrawerClosedEventCallback  
(target As LibEposPrint.DrawerClosedEvent)
```

### Parameter

- target : This specifies the object that has the notification destination method (definition of call-back method).  
To cancel the registration of the notification destination, specify as follows:

| Development Language | Code    |
|----------------------|---------|
| Visual C#            | null    |
| Visual Basic .NET    | Nothing |

### Definition of Callback Method

Visual C#

```
void Method name(String deviceName)
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Sub Method name(deviceName As String)
```

### Parameter

- deviceName : The identifier (IPv4 type IP address/ BD address/ Device node/ Printer host name) of the device that is notified of printer status is set.

**Example**

- Visual C#

```
private void Drawer_Closed_Event(string deviceName)
{
    ///Process///
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    Print printer = new Print();

    DrawerClosedEvent drawerClosedEvent
        = new DrawerClosedEvent(Drawer_Closed_Event);
    printer.SetDrawerClosedEventCallback(drawerClosedEvent);

    try
    {
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
            Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
            Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Private Sub Drawer_Closed_Event(deviceName As String)
    '///Process///
End Sub

Private Async Sub openPrinter()
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()

    Dim Dim drawerClosedEvent As DrawerClosedEvent
        = New DrawerClosedEvent(AddressOf Drawer_Closed_Event)
    printer.SetDrawerClosedEventCallback(drawerClosedEvent)

    Try
        Await printer.OpenPrintAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
            Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)

        '///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        if ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            '///Process///
        End If
    End Try
End Sub
```

## SetDrawerOpenEventCallback

This registers the notification destination of drawer open events. This refers to events that are notified when printer status is drawer open.



- This API can be executed following execution of [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- When this API is executed on multiple occasions, the notification destination that is specified afterwards is overwritten.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void SetDrawerOpenEventCallback  
(LibEposPrint.DrawerOpenEvent target);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub SetDrawerOpenEventCallback  
(target As LibEposPrint.DrawerOpenEvent)
```

### Parameter

- target : This specifies the object that has the notification destination method (definition of call-back method).  
To cancel the registration of the notification destination, specify as follows:

| Development Language | Code    |
|----------------------|---------|
| Visual C#            | null    |
| Visual Basic .NET    | Nothing |

### Definition of Callback Method

Visual C#

```
void Method name(String deviceName)
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Sub Method name(deviceName As String)
```

### Parameter

- deviceName : The identifier (IPv4 type IP address/ BD address/ Device node/ Printer host name) of the device that is notified of printer status is set.



**Example**

- Visual C#

```
private void Drawer_Open_Event(string deviceName)
{
    ///Process///
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    Print printer = new Print();

    DrawerOpenEvent drawerOpenEvent = new DrawerOpenEvent(Drawer_Open_Event);
    printer.SetDrawerOpenEventCallback(drawerOpenEvent);

    try
    {
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
                                         Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Private Sub Drawer_Open_Event(deviceName As String)
    '///Process///
End Sub

Private Async Sub openPrinter()
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()

    Dim drawerOpenEvent As DrawerOpenEvent
        = New DrawerOpenEvent(AddressOf Drawer_Open_Event)
    printer.SetDrawerOpenEventCallback(drawerOpenEvent)

    Try
        Await printer.OpenPrintAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
        '///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            '///Process///
        End If
    End Try
End Sub
```

## SetBatteryLowEventCallback

This registers the notification destination of a battery low event. This refers to events that are notified when printer status is battery offline.



- This API can be executed following execution of [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- When this API is executed on multiple occasions, the notification destination that is specified afterwards is overwritten.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void SetBatteryLowEventCallback  
(LibEposPrint.BatteryLowEvent target);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub SetBatteryLowEventCallback  
(target As LibEposPrint.BatteryLowEvent)
```

### Parameter

- target : This specifies the object that has the notification destination method (definition of call-back method).  
To cancel the registration of the notification destination, specify as follows:

| Development Language | Code    |
|----------------------|---------|
| Visual C#            | null    |
| Visual Basic .NET    | Nothing |

### Definition of Callback Method

Visual C#

```
void Method name(String deviceName)
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Sub Method name(deviceName As String)
```

### Parameter

- deviceName : The identifier (IPv4 type IP address/ BD address/ Device node/ Printer host name) of the device that is notified of printer status is set.

**Example**

- Visual C#

```
private void Battery_Low_Event(string deviceName)
{
    ///Process///
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    Print printer = new Print();

    BatteryLowEvent batteryLowEvent = new BatteryLowEvent(Battery_Low_Event);
    printer.SetBatteryLowEventCallback(batteryLowEvent);

    try
    {
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
                                         Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Private Sub Battery_Low_Event(deviceName As String)
    '///Process///
End Sub

Private Async Sub openPrinter()
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()

    Dim batteryLowEvent As BatteryLowEvent
        = New BatteryLowEvent(AddressOf Battery_Low_Event)
    printer.SetBatteryLowEventCallback(batteryLowEvent)

    Try
        Await printer.OpenPrintAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
        '///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        if ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            '///Process///
        End If
    End Try
End Sub
```

## SetBatteryOkEventCallback

This registers the notification destination of a battery OK event. This refers to events that are notified when the printer status recovers from offline due to remaining battery power.



- This API can be executed following execution of [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- When this API is executed on multiple occasions, the notification destination that is specified afterwards is overwritten.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void SetBatteryOkEventCallback  
(LibEposPrint.BatteryOkEvent target);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub SetBatteryOkEventCallback  
(target As LibEposPrint.BatteryOkEvent)
```

### Parameter

- target : This specifies the object that has the notification destination method (definition of call-back method).  
To cancel the registration of the notification destination, specify as follows:

| Development Language | Code    |
|----------------------|---------|
| Visual C#            | null    |
| Visual Basic .NET    | Nothing |

### Definition of Callback Method

Visual C#

```
void Method name(String deviceName)
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Sub Method name(deviceName As String)
```

### Parameter

- deviceName : The identifier (IPv4 type IP address/ BD address/ Device node/ Printer host name) of the device that is notified of printer status is set.

**Example**

- Visual C#

```
private void Battery_Ok_Event(string deviceName)
{
    ///Process///
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    Print printer = new Print();

    BatteryOkEvent batteryOkEvent = new BatteryOkEvent(Battery_Ok_Event);
    printer.SetBatteryOkEventCallback(batteryOkEvent);

    try
    {
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
                                         Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Private Sub Battery_Ok_Event(deviceName As String)
    '///Process///
End Sub

Private Async Sub openPrinter()
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()

    Dim batteryOkEvent As BatteryOkEvent
        = New BatteryOkEvent(AddressOf Battery_Ok_Event)
    printer.SetBatteryOkEventCallback(batteryOkEvent)

    Try
        Await printer.OpenPrintAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
        '///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        if ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            '///Process///
        End If
    End Try
End Sub
```

## SetBatteryStatusChangeEventCallback

This registers the notification destination of battery status.



- This API can be executed following execution of [OpenPrinterAsync \(p.133\)](#).
- When this API is executed on multiple occasions, the notification destination that is specified afterwards is overwritten.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public void SetBatteryStatusChangeEventCallback  
(LibEposPrint.BatteryStatusChangeEvent target);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Sub SetBatteryStatusChangeEventCallback  
(target As LibEposPrint.BatteryStatusChangeEvent)
```

### Parameter

- target : This specifies the object that has the notification destination method (definition of call-back method).  
To cancel the registration of the notification destination, specify as follows:

| Development Language | Code    |
|----------------------|---------|
| Visual C#            | null    |
| Visual Basic .NET    | Nothing |

### Definition of Callback Method

Visual C#

```
void Method name(String deviceName, int battery)
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Sub Method name(deviceName As String,  
battery As Integer)
```

### Parameter

- deviceName : The identifier (IPv4 type IP address/ BD address/ Device node/ Printer host name) of the device that is notified of printer status is set.
- battery : Battery status is set.

**Example**

- Visual C#

```
private void Battery_Status_Change_Event(string deviceName, int battery)
{
    ///Process///
}

private async void openPrinter()
{
    Print printer = new Print();
    BatteryStatusChangeEvent batteryStatusChangeEvent
        = new BatteryStatusChangeEvent(Battery_Status_Change_Event);
    printer.SetBatteryStatusChangeEventCallback(batteryStatusChangeEvent);

    try
    {
        await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE,
                                         Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);

        ///Process///
    }
    catch (Exception ex)
    {
        if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
        {
            ///Process///
        }
    }
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Private Sub Battery_Status_Change_Event(deviceName As String, battery As Integer)
    '///Process///
End Sub

Private Async Sub openPrinter()
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()

    Dim batteryStatusChangeEvent As BatteryStatusChangeEvent
        = New BatteryStatusChangeEvent(AddressOf Battery_Status_Change_Event)
    printer.SetBatteryStatusChangeEventCallback(batteryStatusChangeEvent)

    Try
        Await printer.OpenPrintAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                         Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
        '///Process///
    Catch ex As Exception
        if ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
            '///Process///
        End If
    '///Process///
    End Try
End Sub
```

## GetStatusAsync

Acquires the printer status and the battery status.

In addition to the printer statuses acquired by [SendDataAsync \(p.141\)](#), this API can acquire the following printer statuses.

- Head temporary overheat error
- Motor driver IC temporary overheat error
- Battery temporary overheat error
- Paper error



- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public Windows.Foundation.IAsyncOperation  
    <PrinterStatus> getStatusAsync() ;
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Function GetStatusAsync() As  
    Windows.Foundation.IAsyncOperation  
        (Of LibEposPrint.PrinterStatus)
```

### Return value

The printer status and the battery status return.

- The printer status returns to `PrinterStatus.printerStatus`.  
This returns the printer status at the time this API was executed.  
For details on the printer status, see [Printer Statuses and Actions to Take \(p.47\)](#).
- The battery status returns to `PrinterStatus.batteryStatus`.  
This returns the battery status at the time this API was executed.  
For details on the battery status, see [Support Information by Printer \(p.208\)](#).



## Exceptions

When processing fails, EposException is thrown with one of the following error values.

| HResult                          | Description  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.   |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An attempt was made to start communicating with the device with which communication had already started.</li> <li>An unspecified error occurred.</li> </ul> |

## Example

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Print printer = new Print();
    PrinterStatus status = new PrinterStatus();
    await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
        Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);
    status = await printer.getStatusAsync();
    ///Process///
    await printer.ClosePrinterAsync();
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Dim printer As Print = New Print()
    Dim status As PrinterStatus = New PrinterStatus()
    Await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
        Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
    Status = Await printer.getStatusAsync()
    `///Process///
    Await printer.ClosePrinterAsync()
Catch ex As Exception
    if ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try
```

## GetPrinterStatus

Acquires the printer status and battery status from an exception that occurred in [SendDataAsync \(p.141\)](#).

---

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public static LibEposPrint.PrinterStatus  
    GetPrinterStatus(int hresult);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Function GetPrinterStatus(hresult As Integer)  
    As LibEposPrint.PrinterStatus
```

### Parameter

- **hresult** : This specifies HRESULT as an exception.

### Return value

Returns the printer status and battery status.

- The printer status is returned to PrinterStatus.printerStatus.  
For details, refer to [Printer Statuses and Actions to Take \(p.47\)](#).
- The battery status is returned to PrinterStatus.batteryStatus.  
For details, refer to [Battery Status \(p.49\)](#).

### Example

To acquire the printer status from Exception.

- Visual C#

```

Print printer = new Print();
PrinterStatus status;
status.printerStatus = 0;
status.batteryStatus = 0;

try
{
    Builder builder = new Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK);
    ///Process///
    await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                   Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT);
    status = await printer.SendDataAsync(builder, 10000);
    ///Process///
    await printer.ClosePrinterAsync();
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    status = printer.GetPrinterStatus(ex.HResult);
    ///Process///
    if((status.printerStatus & Print.ST_PRINT_SUCCESS) == Print.ST_PRINT_SUCCESS)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
}

```

- Visual Basic .NET

```

Dim printer As Print = New Print()
Dim status As PrinterStatus
status.printerStatus = 0
status.batteryStatus = 0

Try
    Dim builder As Builder = New Builder("TM-T88V", ModelLang.MODEL_LANG_ANK)
    builder.AddText("ABCDE" + vbCrLf)

    Await printer.OpenPrinterAsync(DevType.DEVTYPE_TCP, "192.168.192.168",
                                   Monitoring.MONITORING_TRUE, Print.PARAM_DEFAULT)
    status = Await printer.SendDataAsync(builder, 10000)
    Await printer.ClosePrinterAsync()

    `///Process///

Catch ex As Exception
    Dim errStatus As PrinterStatus = printer.GetPrinterStatus(ex.HResult)
    If (status.printerStatus And Print.ST_PRINT_SUCCESS)
        = Print.ST_PRINT_SUCCESS Then
        `///Process///
    End If
    `///Process///
End Try

```

# Printer Search API

API to search for printers. The following classes is available.

- Finder class ([p. 180](#))

## Finder class

Class to search for printers. The following APIs are available.

| API                        | Description                         | Page                |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------|
| StartAsync                 | Starts searching for printers.      | <a href="#">180</a> |
| StopAsync                  | End communication with the printer. | <a href="#">182</a> |
| GetDeviceInfoList          | Getting the printer search result.  | <a href="#">183</a> |
| GetResult(Previous format) |                                     | <a href="#">185</a> |

## StartAsync

Starts a search for printers of the specified device type.



If you use this API, be sure to use [StopAsync \(p.182\)](#) to stop the search.



- For a TCP device search, if multiple network adapters exist, a search is made for an adapter for which the number of hops becomes minimum.
- You cannot call this API when a printer search is already in progress.
- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.

## Syntax

Visual C#

```
public static Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction  
    StartAsync  
    (LibEposPrint.IoDevType deviceType,  
     System.String findOption);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Shared Function StartAsync  
    (deviceType As LibEposPrint.IoDevType,  
     findOption As String)  
    As Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction
```

### Parameter

- **deviceType** : Specifies the device type to search for. The following values can be specified.

| deviceType          | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| IoDevType.TCP       | Searches for TM devices connected to the network                                      |
| IoDevType.BLUETOOTH | Searches for <i>Bluetooth</i> ® devices already paired and connected via serial port. |

- **findOption** : Specifies the setting value when searching for a specific target device.

| deviceType          | Setting Value                       |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| IoDevType.TCP       | The broadcast address to search for |
| IoDevType.BLUETOOTH | "" (Empty characters)               |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.   |
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A)     | Could not execute process.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.  |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This API was called when a search was already in progress</li> <li>• An unspecified error occurred.</li> </ul> |

## StopAsync

Stops the printer search.



- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public static Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction  
    StopAsync() ;
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Shared Function StopAsync()  
    As Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction
```

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                      | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A) | Could not execute process.   |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This API was called when a search was already in progress</li><li>• An unspecified error occurred.</li></ul> |

## GetDeviceInfoList

Gets the printer search result until the time when this API was called.



- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public static DeviceInfo[]
    GetDeviceInfoList(LibEposPrint.IoFilterOption filterOption);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Shared Function GetDeviceInfoList(filterOption As
    LibEposPrint.IoFilterOption) As
    DeviceInfo()
```

### Parameter

- `filterOption` : This specifies the filtering method for Epson printers. Specify one of the following values:

| deviceType                 | Description                 |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| FilterOption.FILTER_NONE   | Do not filter.              |
| FilterOption.FILTER_NAME   | Filter in the printer name. |
| FilterOption.PARAM_DEFAULT | Filter in the printer name. |



For TCP connection, only Epson printers are searched for regardless of the `filterOption` setting.

## Return value

The list of devices found during search is returned.

Identification information of the found devices is stored as a character string (String type) in the list.

The stored results differ depending on the type of device (deviceType).

| deviceType          | deviceType  | List to Acquire   |
|---------------------|-------------|---|
| IoDevType.TCP       | DeviceType  | DevType.TCP(Fixed)  |
|                     | PrinterName | Printer model name  |
|                     | DeviceName  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>DHCP disabled: IP address</li><li>DHCP enabled: MAC address</li></ul> |
|                     | IpAddress   | IP Address  |
|                     | MacAddress  | MAC Address   |
| IoDevType.BLUETOOTH | DeviceType  | DevType.BLUETOOTH(Fixed)  |
|                     | PrinterName | Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> device name  |
|                     | DeviceName  | BD Address<br>(the same format as the MAC address format)   |
|                     | IpAddress   | "" (Empty character)  |
|                     | MacAddress  | "" (Empty character)  |

## Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A)     | Could not execute process.   |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.   |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>This API was called when a search was already in progress</li><li>An unspecified error occurred.</li></ul> |



## GetResult(Previous format)

Gets the printer search result until the time when this API was called.



- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public static System.String[] GetResult();
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Shared Function GetResult() As String()
```

### Return value

The list of devices found during search is returned.

Identification information of the found devices is stored as a character string (String type) in the list.

The stored results differ depending on the type of device (deviceType).

| deviceType          | List to Acquire                                    |
|---------------------|--|
| IoDevType.TCP       | List of IP addresses of printers                   |
| IoDevType.BLUETOOTH | List of BD addresses of <i>Bluetooth</i> ® devices |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                          | Description   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A)     | Could not execute process.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.  |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This API was called when a search was already in progress</li> <li>• An unspecified error occurred.</li> </ul> |

# Log Setting API

Sets the log output. The following class is available.

- ❑ Log class ([p. 186](#))

## Log class

Sets the log output function.

| API            | Description                   | Page                |
|----------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| SetLogSettings | Sets the log output function. | <a href="#">186</a> |

## SetLogSettings

Sets the log output function.



When the log output function is enabled for TCP communication, it may take a longer period of time to process each API depending on the environment.

## Syntax

Visual C#

```
public static void SetLogSettings
    (LibEposPrint.LogPeriod period,
     LibEposPrint.LogEnabled enabled,
     System.String ipAddress, int port,
     int logSize, LibEposPrint.LogLevel logLevel);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Shared Sub SetLogSettings
    (period As LibEposPrint.LogPeriod,
     enabled As LibEposPrint.LogEnabled,
     ipAddress As String, port As Integer,
     logSize As Integer,
     logLevel As LibEposPrint.LogLevel)
```

## Parameter

- context : Specifies the context of the application.
- period : Specifies the method of setting the log output function.

| Set value               | Description   |
|-------------------------|---|
| LogPeriod.LOG_TEMPORARY | The settings of this API are disabled when the application is ended.      |
| LogPeriod.LOG_PERMANENT | The settings of this API are enabled even after the application is ended. |



To specify period for the LogPeriod.LOG\_PERMANENT, set the permissions for the application to access the storage.

- **enabled :** Specifies whether to enable the log output function and the log output destination.

| Set value              | Description                               |
|------------------------|---|
| LogEnabled.LOG_DISABLE | Disables the log output function.         |
| LogEnabled.LOG_STORAGE | Outputs log data to the device's storage. |
| LogEnabled.LOG_TCP     | Outputs log data over TCP.                |



- To specify enabled for the LogEnabled.LOG\_STORAGE, set the permissions for the application to access the storage.
- To specify enabled for the LogEnabled.LOG\_TCP, set the permissions for the application to access the network.

- **ipAddress :** Specifies the IPv4 IP address for TCP communication.



If either of the following values is specified for enabled, "" (empty characters) can be specified for this parameter.

- \* LogEnabled.LOG\_DISABLE
- \* LogEnabled.LOG\_STORAGE

- **port :** Specifies the port number for TCP communication. Specifies an integer from 0 to 65535.



Even if either of the following values is specified for enabled, specify an integer within the range.

- \* LogEnabled.LOG\_DISABLE
- \* LogEnabled.LOG\_STORAGE

- **logSize :** Specifies the maximum size of log data that is saved on the device's storage. Specifies an integer from 1 to 50 (Unit: MB).



Even if either of the following values is specified for enabled, specify an integer within the range.

- \* LogEnabled.LOG\_DISABLE
- \* LogEnabled.LOG\_TCP

- **logLevel :** Specifies the level of log data to be output.

| Set value        | Description |
|------------------|-------------|
| LogLevel.LOG_LOW | Low level   |

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                         | Description                    |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057) | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)       | An unspecified error occurred. |

## Example

To output log data to port 8080 (IP address: 192.168.192.168) over TCP:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Log.SetLogSettings(LogPeriod.LOG_PERMANENT, LogEnabled.LOG_TCP,
        "192.168.192.168", 8080, 10, LogLevel.LOG_LOW);
} catch (Exception ex) {
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Log.SetLogSettings(LogPeriod.LOG_PERMANENT, LogEnabled.LOG_TCP,
        "192.168.192.168", 8080, 10, LogLevel.LOG_LOW)
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        ///Process///
    End If
    ///Process///
End Try
```

To output log data to the device's storage:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Log.SetLogSettings(LogPeriod.LOG_PERMANENT, LogEnabled.LOG_STORAGE, "",
        0, 10, LogLevel.LOG_LOW);
} catch (Exception ex) {
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Log.SetLogSettings(LogPeriod.LOG_PERMANENT, LogEnabled.LOG_STORAGE, "",
        0, 10, LogLevel.LOG_LOW)
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        ///Process///
    End If
    ///Process///
End Try
```

To disable the log output function:

- Visual C#

```
try
{
    Log.SetLogSettings(LogPeriod.LOG_PERMANENT, LogEnabled.LOG_DISABLE, "",
0, 10, LogLevel.LOG_LOW);
} catch (Exception ex) {
    if (ex.HResult == EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
    ///Process///
}
```

- Visual Basic .NET

```
Try
    Log.SetLogSettings(LogPeriod.LOG_PERMANENT, LogEnabled.LOG_DISABLE, "",
0, 10, LogLevel.LOG_LOW)
Catch ex As Exception
    If ex.HResult = EposHResult.HR_E_FAIL Then
        \\Process\\
    End If
    \\Process\\
End Try
```

## How to Extract a Log File

### Save destination

□ %LOCALAPPDATA%/Packages/(application package name)/LocalState/EposLog

### File name

| File name  | Description   |
|--|---|
| EposLog.txt  | The upper limit of the number of lines in the log file is 5MB.                                    |
| EposLog.txt.<X>.zip<br><Example:><br>EposLog.txt.1.zip | When number of lines in the log file reaches the upper limit, it is compressed in the ZIP format. |

## How to read a log

### Log format

A log record is configured in the following format:

<< **date and time, process ID: thread ID, input and output layer, input and output direction, input and output data** >>

| Item                       | Description   |
|----------------------------|---|
| Date and time              | In yyyy/mm/dd,h:mm:ss.000 format.   |
| Process ID: thread ID      | ID of each process  |
| Input and output layer     | Layer at which data is input and output <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• APIIO: Interface layer called by the application</li><li>• IOCM/DEVIO: Layer for communication with devices</li></ul> |
| Input and output direction | Direction in which data is input and output <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• -&gt;: Input from a layer</li><li>• &lt;-: Output from a layer</li></ul>  |
| Input and output data      | Called API, parameter, and communication data   |



Each item is separated by a comma (,).

### Output example

To call the AddCut method from the application:

```
2014/07/28,20:12:35.836,00002ae9:00006008,APIIO,->,0x687bc5d8,,AddCut,1  
2014/07/28,20:12:35.836,00002ae9:00006008,APIIO,<-,0x687bc5d8,0,AddCut }
```

# Command Transmission/Reception

This chapter describes APIs for transmission and reception of commands (ESC/POS commands, etc.).



The APIs for command transmission and reception described in this chapter are intended for customers who understand ESC/POS commands very well.

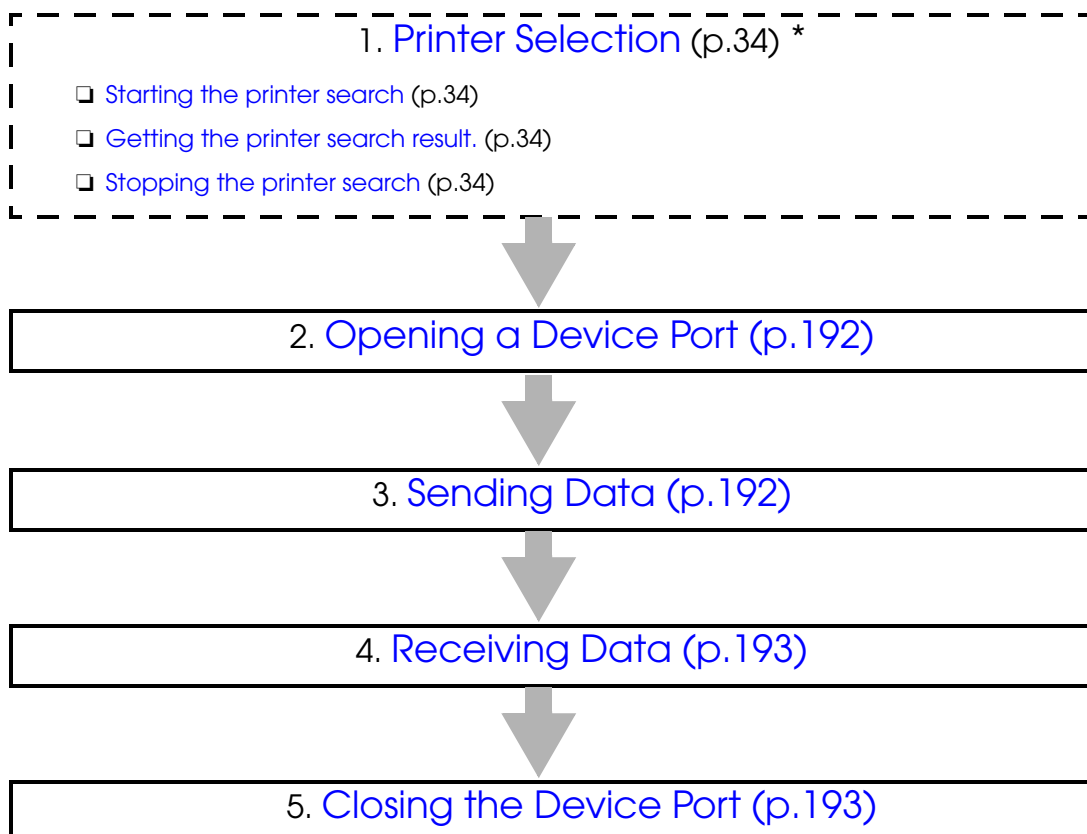


- A command transmission/reception API cannot be used with the [Print class](#) (p.53) of ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps.
- Descriptions made using source code in this chapter are based on Visual C#. For any language other than the above, read such descriptions in ways that suit the relevant language.

## Programming

### Programming Flow

Perform programming following this flow.



\* This is optional.

## Opening a Device Port

Use the EpsonIo class's [OpenAsync \(p.196\)](#) to open a device port. Please refer to the following code.

```
try {
//Initialize the EpsonIo class
    EpsonIo port = new EpsonIo();

//Open the device port
//<Wi-Fi/Ethernet device>
    async port.OpenAsync(IoDevType.TCP, "192.168.192.168", "");
//<Bluetooth device>
    async port.OpenAsync(IoDevType.BLUETOOTH, "00:00:12:34:56:78", "");
}
//Exception processing
catch (Exception ex)
{
    int errCode = ex.HResult;
}
```

## Sending Data

Use the EpsonIo class's [WriteBytes \(p.199\)](#) to buffer data and send data using [WriteAsync \(p.200\)](#). Please refer to the following code.

Printing out "Hello, World!"

```
//Settings for sending
System.String str = "Hello World!\n";
byte[] data = System.Text.Encoding.GetEncoding("shift_jis").GetBytes(str);
int offset = 0;
int size = data.Length;
int timeout = 5000;
int sizeCopy = 0;
int sizeWritten = 0;

try {
//Buffer data
    sizeCopy = port.WriteBytes(data, offset, size);

//Send data
    sizeWritten = await port.WriteAsync(timeout);
}
//Exception processing
catch (Exception ex)
{
    int errCode = ex.HResult;
}
```



## Receiving Data

Use the `EpsonIo` class's [ReadAsync \(p.204\)](#) to receive data from a printer and read data using [ReadBytes \(p.202\)](#). Please refer to the following code.

```
//Settings for receiving
byte[] data = new byte[256];
int offset = 0;
int size = 256;
int timeout = 5000;
int sizeRead = 0;
int sizeCopy = 0;

try {
    //Receive data
    sizeRead = await port.ReadAsync(size, timeout);

    //Read data
    sizeCopy = port.ReadBytes(out data, data, offset, size);
}
//Exception processing
catch (Exception ex)
{
    int errCode = ex.HResult;
}
```

## Closing the Device Port

Use the `EpsonIo` class's [CloseAsync \(p.198\)](#) to close the device port. Please refer to the following code.

```
try {
    EpsonIo port = new EpsonIo();
    async port.OpenAsync(IoDevType.TCP, "192.168.192.168", "");
    //Close the device port
    async port.CloseAsync();
}
//Exception processing
catch (Exception ex)
{
    int errCode = ex.HResult;
}
```

## Exception handling

The command transmission/reception API generates a Windows system exception when an error occurs to notify the calling side of such an error.

---

### Steps for Handling

Please refer to the following code.

```
//Settings for sending
System.String str = "Hello World!\n";
byte[] data = System.Text.Encoding.GetEncoding("utf-8").GetBytes(str);
int offset = 0;
int size = data.Length;
int timeout = 5000;
int sizeCopy = 0;
int sizeWritten = 0;

try {
    //Buffer data
    sizeCopy = port.WriteBytes(data, offset, size);
    //Send data
    sizeWritten = await port.WriteAsync(timeout);
}
//Exception processing
catch (Exception ex)
{
    if(ex.HResult == IoHResult.HR_E_FAIL)
    {
        ///Process///
    }
}
```

### List of Error Values

In ePOS-Print SDK for Windows Store apps, a Windows system exception with any of the following error statuses is returned.

| Error Value                       | Cause  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)   | Invalid parameter was passed.<br><Example> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An invalid parameter such as null was passed.</li> <li>A value outside the supported range was specified.</li> </ul>   |
| HR_E_ACCESSDENIED<br>(0x80070005) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Open processing failed.</li> <li>Failed to connect to device.</li> </ul> <Example> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Failed to create a TCP and <i>Bluetooth</i><sup>®</sup> communication socket.</li> <li>Failed to open the device file to which the path is specified.</li> <li>Failed to send data to the target device for a reason other than a timeout.</li> <li>Failed to receive data from the target device for a reason other than a timeout.</li> </ul> |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E)  | Could not allocate the necessary memory for processing.  |
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A)      | Could not execute process.<br><Example><br>Could not get lock rights to the shared resource because the same process is currently being executed by another thread.  |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Illegal method used.</li> <li>An unspecified error occurred.</li> </ul> <Example> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The API for sending and receiving data was called when the device port was not open.</li> <li>The printer search API was called again when a printer search was already in progress.</li> </ul>  |

# Command Transmission/Reception API Reference

The following classes are available for command transmission/reception APIs:

## ***EpsonIo* class**

Class to transmit and receive data. The following APIs are available.

| API        | Description             | Page                |
|------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| OpenAsync  | Opens the device port.  | <a href="#">196</a> |
| CloseAsync | Closes the device port. | <a href="#">198</a> |
| WriteBytes | Writes sending data.    | <a href="#">199</a> |
| WriteAsync | Send data.              | <a href="#">200</a> |
| ReadBytes  | Reads receiving data.   | <a href="#">202</a> |
| ReadAsync  | Receive data.           | <a href="#">204</a> |

## OpenAsync

Opens the specified device port.



- If communication with the printer is not required anymore, be sure to call [CloseAsync \(p.198\)](#) to end communication with the printer.
- A maximum of 16 device ports can be opened in the same application at the same time.



- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.
- When a printer is connected, a connection confirmation screen may appear. Execute this API from a UI thread.

## **Syntax**

*Visual C#*

```
public Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction OpenAsync
    (LibEposPrint.IoDevType deviceType,
     System.String deviceName,
     System.String deviceSettings);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Function OpenAsync
    (deviceType As LibEposPrint.IoDevType,
     deviceName As String, deviceSettings As String)
    As Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction
```

### Parameter

- **deviceType** : Specifies the device type to open. The following values can be specified.

| deviceType          | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| IoDevType.TCP       | Specify this when the printer to be opened will connect with Wi-Fi/Ethernet.     |
| IoDevType.BLUETOOTH | Specify this when the printer to be opened will connect with <i>Bluetooth</i> ®. |

- **deviceName** : Specifies the identifier to locate the target device. The following values can be specified.

| deviceType          | Specified Value   |
|---------------------|---|
| IoDevType.TCP       | One of the following can be specified. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IPv4 IP address (Example: "192.168.192.168")</li> <li>• MAC address (Example: "01:23:45:67:89:AB")</li> <li>• Printer host name (Arbitrary string)</li> </ul> |
| IoDevType.BLUETOOTH | BD address (Example: "01:23:45:67:89:AB")   |

- **deviceSettings** :  
Specifies "" (empty characters).

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HRESULT                           | Description   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)   | Invalid parameter was passed.   |
| HR_E_ACCESSDENIED<br>(0x80070005) | Open processing failed.   |
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A)      | Could not execute process.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E)  | Could not allocate memory.  |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• User attempted to open a device that is already open.</li> <li>• An unspecified error occurred.</li> </ul> |

## CloseAsync

Closes the specified device port.



- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction CloseAsync();
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Function CloseAsync()  
    As Windows.Foundation.IAsyncAction
```

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                      | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A) | Could not execute process.   |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This API was called when no device port was open.</li><li>• An unspecified error occurred.</li></ul> |

## WriteBytes

Writes sending data into the EpsonIo class's buffer.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public int WriteBytes(byte[] data, int offset,
                      int size);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Function WriteBytes(data() As Byte,
                          offset As Integer, size As Integer) As Integer
```

### Parameter

- data : The sending data buffer. It stores data to be sent.
- offset : Specifies the start position for sending data.  
Please specify the offset value from the top of the sending data buffer.
- size : Specifies the number of bytes to send.



If "0" is specified for size, no data will be written to the EpsonIo class's buffer.  
In such a case, the return value will be "0".

### Return value

Returns the number of bytes of data that were sent.



- The printer did not necessarily receive the amount of data that the return value shows.
- If the amount of time specified in timeout is exceeded, the returned return value is the number of bytes that were sent up to that point.

### Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                          | Description   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)  | Invalid parameter was passed.   |
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A)     | Could not execute process.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E) | Could not allocate memory.  |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This API was called when no device port was open.</li> <li>• An unspecified error occurred.</li> </ul> |



If this API is executed while [WriteAsync \(p.200\)](#) is running, a HR\_E\_PENDING exception occurs due to exclusive control.

## WriteAsync

Sends the EpsonIo class's buffer to a device port.



- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.
- If [CloseAsync \(p.198\)](#) is called before a print process becomes complete on the printer side, data transmission may be suspended.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public Windows.Foundation.IAsyncOperation<int>  
    WriteAsync(int timeout);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Function WriteAsync(timeout As Integer) As  
    Windows.Foundation.IAsyncOperation(Of Integer)
```

### Parameter

- **timeout** : Specifies the time in milliseconds to wait for sending to complete. The maximum value that can be specified is 600000 (which equates to 10 minutes).



- Take the transmission speed and volume of data to be sent into account when specifying the timeout value.
- When the timeout value is too short, the sending process will still continue until all the data has been sent, while normal data sending is occurring, even if the timeout value is exceeded.
- With a *Bluetooth*® device, there is a chance that the sending process will be blocked. In such a case, processing will not complete even if the specified timeout value elapses.

### Return value

Returns the number of bytes of data that were sent.



- The printer did not necessarily receive the amount of data that the return value shows.
- If the amount of time specified in timeout is exceeded, the returned return value is the number of bytes that were sent up to that point.



## Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                           | Description   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)   | Invalid parameter was passed.   |
| HR_E_ACCESSDENIED<br>(0x80070005) | Connection error occurred.  |
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A)      | Could not execute process.  |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E)  | Could not allocate memory.  |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This API was called when no device port was open.</li> <li>• An unspecified error occurred.</li> </ul> |



- If this API is executed by the same object at the same time, a HR\_E\_PENDING exception occurs due to exclusive control for a process without ownership.
- When this API is called within 20 seconds after the connection to the TM printer is lost, no exception occurs because of *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> device control specifications.

## ReadBytes

Reads receiving data from the EpsonIo class's buffer.



This API can be executed on multiple occasions as long as data remains in the EpsonIo class's buffer.

### Syntax

*Visual C#*

```
public int ReadBytes(out byte[] outData, byte[] data,  
                      int offset, int size);
```

*Visual Basic .NET*

```
Public Function ReadBytes  
    (ByRef outData() As Byte, data() As Byte,  
     offset As Integer, size As Integer) As Integer
```

### Parameter

- outData : The receiving data buffer for storing received data.  
(A buffer secured by ePOS-Print SDK)
- data : The receiving data buffer for storing received data.  
(A buffer secured by this API)
- offset : Specifies the point to start storing data in the receiving data buffer.  
Please specify the offset value from the top of the receiving data buffer.
- size : Specifies the number of bytes that can be received.



If "0" is specified for size, no data will be received. In such a case, the return value will be "0".

### Return value

The byte size of the data read from the EpsonIo class's buffer is returned.

## Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                           | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)   | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_ACCESSDENIED<br>(0x80070005) | Connection error occurred.   |
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A)      | Could not execute process.   |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E)  | Could not allocate memory.   |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This API was called when no device port was open.</li><li>• An unspecified error occurred.</li></ul> |



If this API is executed while [ReadAsync \(p.204\)](#) is running, a HR\_E\_PENDING exception occurs due to exclusive control.

## ReadAsync

Receives data into the EpsonIo class's buffer from a device port.



- This API is an asynchronous API. Wait until the process by this API ends to execute a new process.
- This API does not support cancellation of asynchronous operation by `Windows.Foundation.IAsyncInfo.Cancel()`.
- This API continues to receive data until a reception error occurs; however, if even a single byte of data fails to be received in the period of time specified for timeout, the process ends.

### Syntax

Visual C#

```
public Windows.Foundation.IAsyncOperation<int>  
    ReadAsync(int size, int timeout);
```

Visual Basic .NET

```
Public Function ReadAsync  
    (size As Integer, timeout As Integer) As  
    Windows.Foundation.IAsyncOperation(Of Integer)
```

### Parameter

- size : Specifies the number of bytes that can be received.



If "0" is specified for size, no data will be received. In such a case, the return value will be "0".

- timeout : Specifies the time in milliseconds to receive data. The maximum value that can be specified is 600000 (which equates to 10 minutes).



- Take the transmission speed and volume of data to be sent into account when specifying the timeout value.
- When the timeout value is too short, the sending process will still continue until all the data has been sent, while normal data sending is occurring, even if the timeout value is exceeded.
- With a *Bluetooth*® device, there is a chance that the sending process will be blocked. In such a case, processing will not complete even if the specified timeout value elapses.

### Return value

Returns the number of bytes that were received.



When this API is executed on multiple occasions, all the received data is added.

## Exceptions

If processing fails, an Exception returning any of the following HRESULTs occurs.

| HResult                           | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| HR_E_INVALIDARG<br>(0x80070057)   | Invalid parameter was passed.  |
| HR_E_PENDING<br>(0x8000000A)      | Could not execute process.   |
| HR_E_ACCESSDENIED<br>(0x80070005) | Connection error occurred.   |
| HR_E_OUTOFMEMORY<br>(0x8007000E)  | Could not allocate memory.   |
| HR_E_FAIL<br>(0x80004005)         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This API was called when no device port was open.</li><li>• An unspecified error occurred.</li></ul> |



If this API is executed by an identical object at the same time, a HR\_E\_PENDING exception occurs due to exclusive control for a process without ownership.



# Appendix

## List of Supported APIs for Each Printer Model

| API  | TM-m10 | TM-m30 | TM-P20 | TM-P60 | TM-P60(Peeler) | TM-P60II | TM-P60II(Peeler) | TM-P80 | TM-T20 | TM-T20II | TM-T70 | TM-T70II | TM-T81II | TM-T82 | TM-T82II | TM-T88V | TM-T90II | TM-U220 | TM-U330 |
|--|--------|--------|--------|--------|----------------|----------|------------------|--------|--------|----------|--------|----------|----------|--------|----------|---------|----------|---------|---------|
| <a href="#">AddTextAlign (p.58)</a>                    | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddTextLineSpace (p.60)</a>                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddTextRotate (p.61)</a>                   | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddText (p.63)</a>                         | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddTextLang (p.65)</a>                     | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddTextFont (p.67)</a>                     | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddTextSmooth (p.69)</a>                   | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | -       | -       |
| <a href="#">AddTextDouble (p.71)</a>                   | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | -       | -       |
| <a href="#">AddTextSize (p.73)</a>                     | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | -       | -       |
| <a href="#">AddTextStyle (p.75)</a>                    | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddTextPosition (p.77)</a>                 | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | -       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddFeedUnit (p.79)</a>                     | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddFeedLine (p.80)</a>                     | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddImageAsync (p.81)</a>                   | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddImageAsync (Previous format) (p.85)</a> | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddLogo (p.90)</a>                         | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | -       | -       |
| <a href="#">AddBarcode (p.92)</a>                      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | -       | -       |
| <a href="#">AddSymbol (p.98)</a>                       | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | -      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | -       | -       |
| <a href="#">AddPageBegin (p.105)</a>                   | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | -       | -       |
| <a href="#">AddPageEnd (p.107)</a>                     | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | -       | -       |
| <a href="#">AddPageArea (p.109)</a>                    | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | -       | -       |
| <a href="#">AddPageDirection (p.111)</a>               | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | -       | -       |
| <a href="#">AddPagePosition (p.113)</a>                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | -       | -       |
| <a href="#">AddPageLine (p.115)</a>                    | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | -      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | -      | -        | -      | -        | -        | -      | -        | -       | -        | -       | -       |
| <a href="#">AddPageRectangle (p.117)</a>               | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | -      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | -      | -        | -      | -        | -        | -      | -        | -       | -        | -       | -       |
| <a href="#">AddCut (p.119)</a>                         | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddPulse (p.121)</a>                       | ✓      | ✓      | -      | -      | -              | -        | -                | -      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddSound (p.123)</a>                       | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | -      | -              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | -      | ✓        | -      | ✓        | -        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | -        | -       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddFeedPosition (p.125)</a>                | -      | -      | ✓      | -      | ✓              | -        | ✓                | ✓      | -      | -        | -      | -        | -        | -      | -        | -       | -        | -       | ✓       |
| <a href="#">AddLayout (p.127)</a>                      | -      | -      | ✓      | -      | ✓              | -        | ✓                | ✓      | -      | -        | -      | -        | -        | -      | -        | -       | -        | -       | -       |
| <a href="#">AddCommand (p.130)</a>                     | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓      | ✓              | ✓        | ✓                | ✓      | ✓      | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓        | ✓      | ✓        | ✓       | ✓        | ✓       | ✓       |

## Support Information by Printer

### TM-m10

|                         |        | 58 mm   |
|-------------------------|--------|---|
| Resolution              |        | 203 dpi x 203 dpi (W x H)   |
| Country                 |        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ANK model</li> <li>• Japanese model</li> <li>• Traditional Chinese model</li> </ul>  |
| Print Width             |        | 420 dots  |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A | ANK: 35 characters<br>Kanji <sup>*1</sup> : 17 characters   |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 42 characters<br>Kanji <sup>*2</sup> : 21 characters   |
|                         | Font C | ANK: 46 characters  |
| Character Size          | Font A | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji <sup>*1</sup> : 24 dots x 24 dots (W x H)   |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 10 dots x 24 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji <sup>*2</sup> : 20 dots x 24 dots (W x H)   |
|                         | Font C | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)   |
| Character Baseline      | Font A | ANK: At the 21st dot from the top of the character<br>Kanji <sup>*1</sup> : At the 21st dot from the top of the character   |
|                         | Font B | ANK: At the 21st dot from the top of the character<br>Kanji <sup>*2</sup> : At the 21st dot from the top of the character   |
|                         | Font C | At the 16th dot from the top of the character   |
| Default Line Feed Space |        | 30 dots   |
| Color Specification     |        | First color   |
| Page Mode Default Area  |        | 420 dots x 2400 dots (W x H)  |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |        | 420 dots x 2400 dots (W x H)  |
| Barcode                 |        | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128, GS1-128, GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated, GS1 DataBar Limited, GS1 DataBar Expanded |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |        | PDF417, QR Code, MaxiCode, GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked, Aztec Code, Data Matrix (Composite Symbology not supported)        |
| Paper Cut               |        | Cut, Feed cut   |



|                 | 58 mm   |
|-----------------|---|
| Drawer Kick-Out | Supported   |
| Buzzer          | Option (Pattern A ~ Pattern E, Error, No paper, Stop) |
| Battery         | Not supported   |

\*1 Differs depending on the Multilingual model specifications.

\*2 Only for Japanese model.

## TM-m30

|                         |        | 58 mm   | 80 mm   |
|-------------------------|--------|---|---|
| Resolution              |        | 203 dpi x 203 dpi (W x H)   |   |
| Country                 |        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ANK model</li> <li>• Japanese model</li> <li>• Simplified Chinese model</li> <li>• Traditional Chinese model</li> </ul>                      |   |
| Print Width             |        | 420 dots  | 576 dots                                      |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A | ANK: 35 characters<br>Kanji *1: 17 characters   | ANK: 48 characters<br>Kanji *1: 24 characters |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 42 characters<br>Kanji *2: 21 characters   | ANK: 57 characters<br>Kanji *2: 28 characters |
|                         | Font C | ANK: 46 characters  | ANK: 64 characters                            |
| Character Size          | Font A | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji *1: 24 dots x 24 dots (W x H)   |   |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 10 dots x 24 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji *2: 20 dots x 24 dots (W x H)   |   |
|                         | Font C | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)   |   |
| Character Baseline      | Font A | ANK: At the 21st dot from the top of the character<br>Kanji *1: At the 21st dot from the top of the character   |   |
|                         | Font B | ANK: At the 21st dot from the top of the character<br>Kanji *2: At the 21st dot from the top of the character   |   |
|                         | Font C | At the 16th dot from the top of the character   |   |
| Default Line Feed Space |        | 30 dots   |   |
| Color Specification     |        | First color   |   |
| Page Mode Default Area  |        | 420 dots x 2400 dots (W x H)  | 576 dots x 2400 dots (W x H)                  |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |        | 420 dots x 2400 dots (W x H)  | 576 dots x 2400 dots (W x H)                  |
| Barcode                 |        | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128, GS1-128, GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated, GS1 DataBar Limited, GS1 DataBar Expanded |   |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |        | PDF417, QR Code, MaxiCode, GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked, Aztec Code, Data Matrix (Composite Symbology not supported)        |   |
| Paper Cut               |        | Cut, Feed cut   |   |
| Drawer Kick-Out         |        | Supported   |   |

|         | 58 mm   | 80 mm |
|---------|---|-------|
| Buzzer  | Option (Pattern A ~ Pattern E, Error, No paper, Stop) |       |
| Battery | Not supported   |       |

\*1 Differs depending on the Multilingual model specifications.

\*2 Only for Japanese model.

## TM-P20 (ANK model / Multi-language model)

|                         |        | 58 mm   |
|-------------------------|--------|---|
| Resolution              |        | 203 dpi x 203 dpi (W x H)   |
| Country                 |        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ANK model</li> <li>• Japanese model</li> <li>• Simplified Chinese model</li> <li>• Traditional Chinese model</li> <li>• South Asian model</li> </ul> |
| Print Width             |        | 384 dots  |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A | ANK: 32 characters<br>Kanji *: 16 characters  |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 42 characters  |
|                         | Font C | ANK: 42 characters  |
|                         | Font D | ANK: 38 characters  |
|                         | Font E | ANK: 48 characters  |
| Character Size          | Font A | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji *: 24 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 9 dots x 24 dots (W x H)   |
|                         | Font C | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)   |
|                         | Font D | ANK: 10 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |
|                         | Font E | ANK: 8 dots x 16 dots (W x H)   |
| Character Baseline      | Font A | ANK: At the 21st dot from the top of the character<br>Kanji *: At the 21st dot from the top of the character  |
|                         | Font B | At the 21st dot from the top of the character   |
|                         | Font C | At the 16th dot from the top of the character   |
|                         | Font D | At the 21st dot from the top of the character   |
|                         | Font E | At the 15th dot from the top of the character   |
| Default Line Feed Space |        | 30 dots   |
| Color Specification     |        | First color   |
| Page Mode Default Area  |        | 384 dots x 2400 dots (W x H)  |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |        | 384 dots x 2400 dots (W x H)  |
| Barcode                 |        | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128, GS1-128, GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated, GS1 DataBar Limited, GS1 DataBar Expanded         |

|                      | 58 mm  |
|----------------------|--|
| Two-Dimensional Code | PDF417, QR Code, MaxiCode, GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked, Aztec Code, Data Matrix (Composite Symbolology not supported) |
| Paper Cut            | Feed cut (Feeds paper to cutting position)   |
| Drawer Kick-Out      | Not supported  |
| Buzzer               | Support (Pattern 1 ~ Pattern 10, Stop)   |
| Battery              | Supported  |

\* Only for Multi-language model

### **Battery Status**

#### *Upper 8 bits*

| Battery Status | Cause                           |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| 0x30           | The AC adapter is connected     |
| 0x31           | The AC adapter is not connected |

#### *Lower 8 bits*

| Battery Status | Cause                       |
|----------------|-----------------------------|
| 0x30           | Battery amount 0 (real end) |
| 0x31           | Battery amount 1 (near end) |
| 0x32           | Battery amount 2            |
| 0x33           | Battery amount 3            |
| 0x34           | Battery amount 4            |
| 0x35           | Battery amount 5            |
| 0x36           | Battery amount 6            |



If 0x0000 is returned, the battery status cannot be acquired.

## TM-P60

|                         |        | 58 mm   | 60 mm                        |
|-------------------------|--------|---|------------------------------|
| Resolution              |        | 203 dpi x 203 dpi (W x H)   |                              |
| Language                |        | ANK model   |                              |
| Print Width             |        | 420 dots  | 432 dots                     |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A | ANK: 35 characters  | ANK: 36 characters           |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 42 characters  | ANK: 43 characters           |
|                         | Font C | ANK: 52 characters  | ANK: 54 characters           |
| Character Size          | Font A | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |                              |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 10 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |                              |
|                         | Font C | ANK: 8 dots x 16 dots (W x H)   |                              |
| Character Baseline      | Font A | At the 21st dot from the top of the character                                 |                              |
|                         | Font B | At the 21st dot from the top of the character                                 |                              |
|                         | Font C | At the 15th dot from the top of the character                                 |                              |
| Default Line Feed Space |        | 30 dots   |                              |
| Color Specification     |        | First color   |                              |
| Page Mode Default Area  |        | 420 dots x 1200 dots (W x H)  | 432 dots x 1200 dots (W x H) |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |        | 420 dots x 1200 dots (W x H)  | 432 dots x 1200 dots (W x H) |
| Barcode                 |        | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128 |                              |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |        | Not supported   |                              |
| Paper Cut               |        | Cut, No cut   |                              |
| Drawer Kick-Out         |        | Not supported   |                              |
| Buzzer                  |        | Supported   |                              |
| Battery                 |        | Supported   |                              |

**Battery Status***Upper 8 bits*

| Battery Status | Cause                           |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| 0x30           | The AC adapter is connected     |
| 0x31           | The AC adapter is not connected |

*Lower 8 bits*

| Battery Status | Cause                 |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| 0x30           | H level               |
| 0x31           | M level               |
| 0x32           | L level               |
| 0x33           | S level               |
| 0x34           | Battery not installed |



If 0x0000 is returned, the battery status cannot be acquired.

## TM-P60II/ TM-P60II with Peeler (ANK model / Multi-language model)

|                         |                      | Receipt   | Die-cut label                                |
|-------------------------|----------------------|---|--|
| Resolution              |                      | 203 dpi x 203 dpi (W x H)   |  |
| Language                |                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ANK model</li> <li>• Traditional Chinese model</li> </ul>  |  |
| Print Width             |                      | 432 dots  | 160 dots ~ 400 dots                          |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A               | ANK: 36 characters<br>Kanji *: 18 characters  | ANK: 33 characters<br>Kanji *: 16 characters |
|                         | Font B               | ANK: 43 characters  | ANK: 40 characters                           |
|                         | Font C               | ANK: 54 characters  | ANK: 50 characters                           |
| Character Size          | Font A               | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji *: 24 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |  |
|                         | Font B               | ANK: 10 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |  |
|                         | Font C               | ANK: 8 dots x 16 dots (W x H)   |  |
| Character Baseline      | Font A               | ANK: At the 21st dot from the top of the character<br>Kanji *: At the 21st dot from the top of the character  |  |
|                         | Font B               | At the 21st dot from the top of the character   |  |
|                         | Font C               | At the 15th dot from the top of the character   |  |
| Default Line Feed Space |                      | 30 dots   |  |
| Color Specification     |                      | First color   |  |
| Page Mode Default Area  |                      | 432 dots x 1624 dots (W x H)  | 400 dots x 1624 dots (W x H)                 |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |                      | 432 dots x 1624 dots (W x H)  | 400 dots x 1624 dots (W x H)                 |
| Barcode                 |                      | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128, GS1-128, GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated, GS1 DataBar Limited, GS1 DataBar Expanded |  |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |                      | PDF417, QR Code, MaxiCode, GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked, Aztec Code, DataMatrix<br>(Composite Symbology not supported)      |  |
| Paper Cut               | TM-P60II             | Cut, Feed cut   |  |
|                         | TM-P60II with Peeler | Feed cut (Feeds paper to cutting position)  |  |
| Drawer Kick-Out         |                      | Not supported   |  |
| Buzzer                  |                      | Support (Pattern 1 ~ Pattern 10, Stop)  |  |
| Battery                 |                      | Supported   |  |



\* Only for Multi-language model

### Paper Layout

| Paper type        | Receipt paper<br>(without black<br>mark) | Receipt paper<br>(with black<br>mark) | Die-cut label<br>paper<br>(without black<br>mark) | Die-cut label<br>paper<br>(with black<br>mark) |
|-------------------|--|---------------------------------------|---|--|
| width (sf)        | 290 to 600                               | 290 to 600                            | 290 to 600  | 290 to 600                                     |
| height (sa)       | 0  | 0, 284 to 1550                        | 0, 284 to 1550                                    | 0, 284 to 1550                                 |
| marginTop (sb)    | 0  | -130 to 1500                          | 0 to 1500   | -15 to 1500                                    |
| marginBottom (se) | 0  | 0                                     | -15 to 0  | -15 to 15                                      |
| offsetCut (sc)    | 0  | -256 to 50                            | 0 to 50   | 0 to 50  |
| offsetLabel (sd)  | 0  | 0                                     | 0   | 0 to 15  |

### Battery Status

#### Upper 8 bits

| Battery Status | Cause                           |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| 0x30           | The AC adapter is connected     |
| 0x31           | The AC adapter is not connected |

#### Lower 8 bits

| Battery Status | Cause                       |
|----------------|-----------------------------|
| 0x30           | Battery amount 0 (real end) |
| 0x31           | Battery amount 1 (near end) |
| 0x32           | Battery amount 2            |
| 0x33           | Battery amount 3            |
| 0x34           | Battery amount 4            |
| 0x35           | Battery amount 5            |
| 0x36           | Battery amount 6            |



If 0x0000 is returned, the battery status cannot be acquired.

## TM-P80 (ANK model / Multi-language model)

|                         |                     | 80 mm   |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---|
| Resolution              |                     | 203 dpi x 203 dpi (W x H)   |
| Language                |                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ANK model</li> <li>• Traditional Chinese model</li> </ul>  |
| Print Width             |                     | 576 dots  |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A              | ANK: 48 characters<br>Kanji *: 24 characters  |
|                         | Font B              | ANK: 64 characters  |
| Character Size          | Font A              | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji *: 24 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |
|                         | Font B              | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)   |
| Character Baseline      | Font A              | ANK: At the 21st dot from the top of the character<br>Kanji *: At the 21st dot from the top of the character  |
|                         | Font B              | At the 16th dot from the top of the character   |
| Default Line Feed Space |                     | 30 dots   |
| Color Specification     |                     | First color   |
| Page Mode Default Area  |                     | 576 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)  |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |                     | 576 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)  |
| Barcode                 |                     | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128, GS1-128, GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated, GS1 DataBar Limited, GS1 DataBar Expanded |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |                     | PDF417, QR Code, MaxiCode, Data Matrix, Aztec Code, GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked<br>(Composite Symbology not supported)     |
| Paper Cut               | manual cutter model | Feed cut (Feeds paper to cutting position)  |
|                         | autocutter model    | Cut, Feed cut   |
| Drawer Kick-Out         |                     | Not supported   |
| Buzzer                  |                     | Support (Pattern 1 ~ Pattern 10, Stop)  |
| Battery                 |                     | Supported   |

\* Only for Multi-language model

**Paper Layout**

| Paper type        | Receipt paper<br>(without black mark) | Receipt paper<br>(with black mark) |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| width (sf)        | 800                                   | 800                                |
| height (sa)       | 0                                     | 0, 284 to 3100                     |
| marginTop (sb)    | 0                                     | -98 to 3100                        |
| marginBottom (se) | 0                                     | 0                                  |
| offsetCut (sc)    | 0                                     | -173 to 50                         |
| offsetLabel (sd)  | 0                                     | 0                                  |

**Battery Status***Upper 8 bits*

| Battery Status | Cause                           |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| 0x30           | The AC adapter is connected     |
| 0x31           | The AC adapter is not connected |

*Lower 8 bits*

| Battery Status | Cause                       |
|----------------|-----------------------------|
| 0x30           | Battery amount 0 (real end) |
| 0x31           | Battery amount 1 (near end) |
| 0x32           | Battery amount 2            |
| 0x33           | Battery amount 3            |
| 0x34           | Battery amount 4            |
| 0x35           | Battery amount 5            |
| 0x36           | Battery amount 6            |



If 0x0000 is returned, the battery status cannot be acquired.

## TM-T20

|                         |        | 58 mm   | 80 mm                        |
|-------------------------|--------|---|------------------------------|
| Resolution              |        | 203 dpi x 203 dpi (W x H)   |                              |
| Language                |        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ANK model</li> <li>• Japanese model</li> </ul>   |                              |
| Print Width             |        | 420 dots  | 576 dots                     |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A | ANK: 35 characters  | ANK: 48 characters           |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 46 characters  | ANK: 64 characters           |
| Character Size          | Font A | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |                              |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)   |                              |
| Character Baseline      | Font A | At the 21st dot from the top of the character   |                              |
|                         | Font B | At the 16th dot from the top of the character   |                              |
| Default Line Feed Space |        | 30 dots   |                              |
| Color Specification     |        | First color   |                              |
| Page Mode Default Area  |        | 420 dots x 831 dots (W x H)   | 576 dots x 831 dots (W x H)  |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |        | 420 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)  | 576 dots x 1662 dots (W x H) |
| Barcode                 |        | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128, GS1-128, GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated, GS1 DataBar Limited, GS1 DataBar Expanded |                              |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |        | PDF417, QR Code, MaxiCode, GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked<br>(Composite Symbolism not supported)                              |                              |
| Paper Cut               |        | Cut, Feed cut   |                              |
| Drawer Kick-Out         |        | Supported   |                              |
| Buzzer                  |        | Option (Pattern A ~ Pattern E, Error, No paper, Stop)   |                              |
| Battery                 |        | Not supported   |                              |

## TM-T20II

|                         |                |                | 58 mm   | 80 mm                          |
|-------------------------|----------------|----------------|---|--------------------------------|
| Resolution              |                |                | 203 dpi x 203 dpi (W x H)   |                                |
| Language                |                |                | ANK model   |                                |
| Print Width             | Normal mode    |                | 420 dots  | 576 dots                       |
|                         | 42 Column Mode |                | 378 dots  | 546 dots                       |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A         | Normal mode    | ANK: 35 characters  | ANK: 48 characters             |
|                         |                | 42 Column Mode | ANK: 42 characters  | ANK: 42 characters             |
|                         | Font B         | Normal mode    | ANK: 46 characters  | ANK: 64 characters             |
|                         |                | 42 Column Mode | ANK: 31 characters  | ANK: 60 characters             |
| Character Size          | Font A         | Normal mode    | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |                                |
|                         |                | 42 Column Mode | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)   | ANK: 13 dots x 24 dots (W x H) |
|                         | Font B         | Normal mode    | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)   |                                |
|                         |                | 42 Column Mode | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)  |
| Character Baseline      | Font A         |                | At the 21st dot from the top of the character   |                                |
|                         | Font B         |                | At the 16th dot from the top of the character   |                                |
| Default Line Feed Space |                |                | 30 dots   |                                |
| Color Specification     |                |                | First color   |                                |
| Page Mode Default Area  |                |                | 420 dots x 831 dots (W x H)   | 576 dots x 831 dots (W x H)    |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |                |                | 420 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)  | 576 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)   |
| Barcode                 |                |                | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128, GS1-128, GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated, GS1 DataBar Limited, GS1 DataBar Expanded |                                |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |                |                | PDF417, QR Code, MaxiCode, GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked (Composite Symbology not supported)                                 |                                |
| Paper Cut               |                |                | Cut, Feed cut   |                                |
| Drawer Kick-Out         |                |                | Supported   |                                |
| Buzzer                  |                |                | Option (Pattern A ~ Pattern E, Error, No paper, Stop)   |                                |
| Battery                 |                |                | Not supported   |                                |

## TM-T70 (ANK model)

|                         |        | 80 mm   |
|-------------------------|--------|---|
| Resolution              |        | 180 dpi x 180 dpi (W x H)   |
| Language                |        | ANK model   |
| Print Width             |        | 512 dots  |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A | ANK: 42 characters  |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 56 characters  |
| Character Size          | Font A | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)   |
| Character Baseline      | Font A | At the 21st dot from the top of the character                                 |
|                         | Font B | At the 16th dot from the top of the character                                 |
| Default Line Feed Space |        | 30 dots   |
| Color Specification     |        | First color   |
| Page Mode Default Area  |        | 512 dots x 831 dots (W x H)   |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |        | 512 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)  |
| Barcode                 |        | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128 |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |        | PDF417, QR Code   |
| Paper Cut               |        | Cut, Feed cut   |
| Drawer Kick-Out         |        | Supported   |
| Buzzer                  |        | Not supported   |
| Battery                 |        | Not supported   |

## TM-T70 (Multi-language model)

|                         |        | 80 mm  |
|-------------------------|--------|--|
| Resolution              |        | 203 dpi x 203 dpi (W x H)  |
| Language                |        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Japanese model</li> <li>• Simplified Chinese model</li> <li>• Traditional Chinese model</li> <li>• South Asian model</li> </ul> |
| Print Width             |        | 576 dots   |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A | ANK: 48 characters<br>Kanji: 24 characters   |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 64 characters   |
| Character Size          | Font A | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji: 24 dots x 24 dots (W x H)   |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)  |
| Character Baseline      | Font A | ANK: At the 21st dot from the top of the character<br>Kanji: At the 21st dot from the top of the character   |
|                         | Font B | At the 16th dot from the top of the character  |
| Default Line Feed Space |        | 30 dots  |
| Color Specification     |        | First color  |
| Page Mode Default Area  |        | 576 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)   |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |        | 576 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)   |
| Barcode                 |        | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128  |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |        | PDF417, QR Code  |
| Paper Cut               |        | Cut, Feed cut  |
| Drawer Kick-Out         |        | Supported  |
| Buzzer                  |        | Not supported  |
| Battery                 |        | Not supported  |

## TM-T70II (ANK model)

|                         |        | 58 mm   | 80 mm                        |
|-------------------------|--------|---|------------------------------|
| Resolution              |        | 180 dpi x 180 dpi (W x H)   |                              |
| Language                |        | ANK model   |                              |
| Print Width             |        | 360 dots  | 512 dots                     |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A | ANK: 30 characters  | ANK: 42 characters           |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 40 characters  | ANK: 56 characters           |
| Character Size          | Font A | 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)   |                              |
|                         | Font B | 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)  |                              |
| Character Baseline      | Font A | At the 21st dot from the top of the character   |                              |
|                         | Font B | At the 15th dot from the top of the character   |                              |
| Default Line Feed Space |        | 30 dots   |                              |
| Color Specification     |        | First color   |                              |
| Page Mode Default Area  |        | 360 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)  | 512 dots x 1662 dots (W x H) |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |        | 360 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)  | 512 dots x 1662 dots (W x H) |
| Barcode                 |        | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128, GS1-128, GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated, GS1 DataBar Limited, GS1 DataBar Expanded |                              |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |        | PDF417, QR Code, MaxiCode, GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked (Composite Symbolology not supported)                               |                              |
| Paper Cut               |        | Cut, Feed cut   |                              |
| Drawer Kick-Out         |        | Supported   |                              |
| Buzzer                  |        | Option (Pattern A ~ Pattern E, Error, No paper, Stop)   |                              |
| Battery                 |        | Not supported   |                              |



## TM-T70II (Multi-language model)

|                         |                              | 58 mm  | 80 mm  |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|
| Resolution              |                              | 203 dpi x 203 dpi (W x H)  |  |
| Language                |                              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Japanese model</li> <li>• Simplified Chinese model</li> <li>• Traditional Chinese model</li> <li>• Korean model</li> <li>• South Asian model</li> </ul> |  |
| Print Width             |                              | 416 dots   | 576 dots   |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A                       | ANK: 34 characters<br>Kanji <sup>*2</sup> : 17 characters  | ANK: 48 characters<br>Kanji <sup>*2</sup> : 24 characters                                      |
|                         | Font B                       | ANK <sup>*1</sup> : 52 characters<br>ANK: 46 characters<br>Kanji <sup>*1</sup> : 26 characters   | ANK <sup>*1</sup> : 72 characters<br>ANK: 64 characters<br>Kanji <sup>*1</sup> : 36 characters |
|                         | Special font A <sup>*2</sup> | 48 characters  |  |
|                         | Special font B <sup>*2</sup> | 64 characters  |  |
| Character Size          | Font A                       | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji <sup>*2</sup> : 24 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |  |
|                         | Font B                       | ANK <sup>*1</sup> : 8 dots x 16 dots (W x H)<br>ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji <sup>*1</sup> : 16 dots x 16 dots (W x H)   |  |
|                         | Special font A <sup>*2</sup> | 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |  |
|                         | Special font B <sup>*2</sup> | 9 dots x 24 dots (W x H)   |  |
| Character Baseline      | Font A                       | ANK: At the 21st dot from the top of the character<br>Kanji <sup>*2</sup> : At the 21st dot from the top of the character  |  |
|                         | Font B                       | ANK <sup>*1</sup> : At the 15th dot from the top of the character<br>ANK: At the 16th dot from the top of the character<br>Kanji <sup>*1</sup> : At the 15th dot from the top of the character   |  |
|                         | Special font A <sup>*2</sup> | At the 21st dot from the top of the character  |  |
|                         | Special font B <sup>*2</sup> | At the 21st dot from the top of the character  |  |
| Default Line Feed Space |                              | 30 dots  |  |
| Color Specification     |                              | First color  |  |
| Page Mode Default Area  |                              | 416 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)   | 576 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)   |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |                              | 416 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)   | 576 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)   |
| Barcode                 |                              | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128, GS1-128, GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated, GS1 DataBar Limited, GS1 DataBar Expanded            |  |

|                      | 58 mm  | 80 mm |
|----------------------|--|-------|
| Two-Dimensional Code | PDF417, QR Code, MaxiCode, GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked<br>(Composite Symbolology not supported) |       |
| Paper Cut            | Cut, Feed cut  |       |
| Drawer Kick-Out      | Supported  |       |
| Buzzer               | Option (Pattern A ~ Pattern E, Error, No paper, Stop)  |       |
| Battery              | Not supported  |       |

\*1 Only for Japanese model

\*2 Differs depending on the Multilingual Model specifications.

**TM-T81II**

|                         |        | 80 mm   |
|-------------------------|--------|---|
| Resolution              |        | 203 dpi x 203 dpi (W x H)   |
| Language                |        | Simplified Chinese model  |
| Print Width             |        | 576 dots  |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A | ANK: 48 characters  |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 64 characters  |
| Character Size          | Font A | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)   |
| Character Baseline      | Font A | At the 21st dot from the top of the character                                 |
|                         | Font B | At the 16th dot from the top of the character                                 |
| Default Line Feed Space |        | 30 dots   |
| Color Specification     |        | First color   |
| Page Mode Default Area  |        | 576 dots x 831 dots (W x H)   |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |        | 576 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)  |
| Barcode                 |        | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128 |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |        | PDF417, QR Code   |
| Paper Cut               |        | Cut, Feed cut   |
| Drawer Kick-Out         |        | Supported   |
| Buzzer                  |        | Not supported   |
| Battery                 |        | Not supported   |

## TM-T82

|                         |        | 58 mm   | 80 mm                        |
|-------------------------|--------|---|------------------------------|
| Resolution              |        | 203 dpi x 203 dpi (W x H)   |                              |
| Language                |        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Simplified Chinese model</li> <li>• South Asian model</li> </ul>   |                              |
| Print Width             |        | 420 dots  | 576 dots                     |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A | ANK: 35 characters  | ANK: 48 characters           |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 46 characters  | ANK: 64 characters           |
| Character Size          | Font A | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |                              |
|                         | Font B | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)   |                              |
| Character Baseline      | Font A | At the 21st dot from the top of the character   |                              |
|                         | Font B | At the 16th dot from the top of the character   |                              |
| Default Line Feed Space |        | 30 dots   |                              |
| Color Specification     |        | First color   |                              |
| Page Mode Default Area  |        | 420 dots x 831 dots (W x H)   | 576 dots x 831 dots (W x H)  |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |        | 420 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)  | 576 dots x 1662 dots (W x H) |
| Barcode                 |        | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128, GS1-128, GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated, GS1 DataBar Limited, GS1 DataBar Expanded |                              |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |        | PDF417, QR Code, MaxiCode, GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked<br>(Composite Symbology not supported)                              |                              |
| Paper Cut               |        | Cut, Feed cut   |                              |
| Drawer Kick-Out         |        | Supported   |                              |
| Buzzer                  |        | Optional  |                              |
| Battery                 |        | Not supported   |                              |

## TM-T82II (ANK model / Multi-language model)

|                         |                |                | 80 mm   |
|-------------------------|----------------|----------------|---|
| Resolution              |                |                | 203 dpi x 203 dpi (W x H)   |
| Language                |                |                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ANK model</li><li>• Simplified Chinese model</li><li>• Traditional Chinese model</li><li>• South Asian model</li></ul>                        |
| Print Width             | Normal mode    |                | 576 dots  |
|                         | 42 Column Mode |                | 546 dots  |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A         | Normal mode    | ANK: 48 characters<br>Kanji *: 24 characters  |
|                         |                | 42 Column Mode | ANK: 42 characters<br>Kanji *: 21 characters  |
|                         | Font B         | Normal mode    | ANK: 64 characters  |
|                         |                | 42 Column Mode | ANK: 60 characters  |
| Character Size          | Font A         | Normal mode    | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji *: 24 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |
|                         |                | 42 Column Mode | ANK: 13 dots x 24 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji *: 26 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |
|                         | Font B         | Normal mode    | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)   |
|                         |                | 42 Column Mode | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)   |
| Character Baseline      | Font A         |                | ANK: At the 21st dot from the top of the character<br>Kanji *: At the 21st dot from the top of the character  |
|                         | Font B         |                | At the 16th dot from the top of the character   |
| Default Line Feed Space |                |                | 30 dots   |
| Color Specification     |                |                | First color   |
| Page Mode Default Area  |                |                | 576 dots x 831 dots (W x H)   |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |                |                | 576 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)  |
| Barcode                 |                |                | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39, ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128, GS1-128, GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated, GS1 DataBar Limited, GS1 Databar Expanded |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |                |                | PDF417, QR Code, MaxiCode, GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked (Composite Symbology not supported)                                 |
| Paper Cut               |                |                | Cut, Feed cut   |

|                 | 80 mm   |
|-----------------|---|
| Drawer Kick-Out | Supported   |
| Buzzer          | Option (Pattern A ~ Pattern E, Error, No paper, Stop) |
| Battery         | Not supported   |

\* Only for Multi-language model

## TM-T88V (ANK model / Multi-language model)

|                         |                 | 58 mm   | 80 mm  |
|-------------------------|-----------------|---|--|
| Resolution              |                 | 180 dpi x 180 dpi (W x H)   |  |
| Language                |                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ANK model</li> <li>• Japanese model</li> <li>• Simplified Chinese model</li> <li>• Traditional Chinese model</li> <li>• Korean model</li> <li>• South Asian model</li> </ul> |  |
| Print Width             |                 | 360 dots  | 512 dots                                     |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A          | ANK: 30 characters<br>Kanji *: 15 characters  | ANK: 42 characters<br>Kanji *: 21 characters |
|                         | Font B          | ANK: 40 characters<br>Kanji *: 22 characters  | ANK: 56 characters<br>Kanji *: 32 characters |
|                         | Special font A* | 30 characters   | 42 characters                                |
|                         | Special font B* | 40 characters   | 56 characters                                |
| Character Size          | Font A          | ANK: 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji *: 24 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |  |
|                         | Font B          | ANK: 9 dots x 17 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji *: 16 dots x 16 dots (W x H)   |  |
|                         | Special font A* | 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)   |  |
|                         | Special font B* | 9 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |  |
| Character Baseline      | Font A          | ANK: At the 21st dot from the top of the character<br>Kanji *: At the 21st dot from the top of the character  |  |
|                         | Font B          | ANK: At the 16th dot from the top of the character<br>Kanji *: At the 15th dot from the top of the character  |  |
|                         | Special font A* | At the 20th dot from the top of the character   |  |
|                         | Special font B* | At the 20th dot from the top of the character   |  |
| Default Line Feed Space |                 | 30 dots   |  |
| Color Specification     |                 | First color   |  |
| Page Mode Default Area  |                 | 360 dots x 831 dots (W x H)   | 512 dots x 831 dots (W x H)                  |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |                 | 360 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)  | 512 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)                 |
| Barcode                 |                 | UPC-A, UPC-E, EAN13, JAN13, EAN8, JAN8, CODE39,<br>ITF, CODABAR, CODE93, CODE128, GS1-128,<br>GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated,<br>GS1 DataBar Limited, GS1 DataBar Expanded                        |  |

|                      | 58 mm  | 80 mm |
|----------------------|--|-------|
| Two-Dimensional Code | PDF417, QR Code, MaxiCode,<br>GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional,<br>GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked<br>(Composite Symbology not supported) |       |
| Paper Cut            | Cut, Feed cut  |       |
| Drawer Kick-Out      | Supported  |       |
| Buzzer               | Option (Pattern A ~ Pattern E, Error, No paper, Stop)  |       |
| Battery              | Not Supported  |       |

\* Differs depending on the Multilingual Model specifications.



**TM-T90II**

|                         |        | 58 mm  | 80 mm                        |
|-------------------------|--------|--|------------------------------|
| Resolution              |        | 203 dpi x 203 dpi (W x H)  |                              |
| Language                |        | Japanese model   |                              |
| Print Width             |        | 420 dots   | 576 dots                     |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A | 35 characters  | 48 characters                |
|                         | Font B | 42 characters  | 57 characters                |
|                         | Font C | 52 characters  | 72 characters                |
| Character Size          | Font A | 12 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |                              |
|                         | Font B | 10 dots x 24 dots (W x H)  |                              |
|                         | Font C | 8 dots x 16 dots (W x H)   |                              |
| Character Baseline      | Font A | At the 21st dot from the top of the character  |                              |
|                         | Font B | At the 21st dot from the top of the character  |                              |
|                         | Font C | At the 15th dot from the top of the character  |                              |
| Default Line Feed Space |        | 30 dots  |                              |
| Color Specification     |        | First color  |                              |
| Page Mode Default Area  |        | 420 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)   | 576 dots x 1662 dots (W x H) |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |        | 420 dots x 1662 dots (W x H)   | 576 dots x 1662 dots (W x H) |
| Barcode                 |        | Codabar, Code39, ITF, JAN13(EAN), JAN8(EAN), UPC-A, UPC-E, Code93, Code128, GS1-128, GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Truncated, GS1 DataBar Expanded, GS1 DataBar Limited |                              |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |        | PDF417, QR Code, MaxiCode, GS1 DataBar Stacked, GS1 DataBar Stacked Omnidirectional, GS1 DataBar Expanded Stacked  |                              |
| Paper Cut               |        | Cut, Feed cut  |                              |
| Drawer Kick-Out         |        | Supported  |                              |
| Buzzer                  |        | Supported  |                              |
| Battery                 |        | Not supported  |                              |

## TM-U220

|                         |                | 76 mm   | 69.5 mm   | 57.5 mm   |
|-------------------------|----------------|---|---|---|
| Resolution              | Single-density | 80 dpi x 72 dpi (W x H)   |   |   |
|                         | Double-density | 160 dpi x 72 dpi (W x H)  |   |   |
| Language                |                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ANK model</li> <li>• Japanese model</li> <li>• Simplified Chinese model</li> <li>• Traditional Chinese model</li> <li>• Korean model</li> <li>• Thai model</li> <li>• South Asian model</li> </ul> |   |   |
| Print Width             | Single-density | 200 dots  | 180 dots  | 150 dots  |
|                         | Double-density | 400 or 385 <sup>*1</sup> half dots  | 360 half dots   | 300 or 297 <sup>*1</sup> half dots                        |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A         | ANK: 33 characters<br>Kanji <sup>*2</sup> : 25 characters   | ANK: 30 characters<br>Kanji <sup>*2</sup> : 22 characters | ANK: 25 characters<br>Kanji <sup>*2</sup> : 18 characters |
|                         | Font B         | ANK: 40 characters  | ANK: 36 characters  | ANK: 30 characters  |
| Character Size          | Font A         | ANK: 4.5 dots x 9 dots (W x H)<br>Kanji <sup>*2</sup> : 16 dots x 16 dots (W x H)   |   |   |
|                         | Font B         | ANK: 3.5 dots x 9 dots (W x H)  |   |   |
| Character Baseline      | Font A         | ANK: Bottom of the characters<br>Kanji <sup>*2</sup> : At the 15th dot from the top of the character  |   |   |
|                         | Font B         | ANK: Bottom of the characters   |   |   |
| Default Line Feed Space |                | 12 dots   |   |   |
| Color Specification     |                | First color   |   |   |
| Page Mode Default Area  |                | -   |   |   |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |                | -   |   |   |
| Barcode                 |                | Not supported   |   |   |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |                | Not supported   |   |   |
| Paper Cut               |                | Cut, Feed cut   |   |   |
| Drawer Kick-Out         |                | Supported   |   |   |
| Buzzer                  |                | Not supported   |   |   |
| Battery                 |                | Not supported   |   |   |

\*1: DipSW2-1 = ON

\*2: Differs depending on the Multilingual Model specifications.



[AddTextStyle](#) (p.75) has the following restrictions.

- reverse parameter: Not supported

## TM-U330

|                         |                      | 76 mm                            | 69.5 mm            | 57.5 mm            |
|-------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Resolution              | Single-density       | 80 dpi x 72 dpi (W x H)          |                    |                    |
|                         | Double-density       | 160 dpi x 72 dpi (W x H)         |                    |                    |
| Language                |                      | Simplified Chinese model         |                    |                    |
| Print Width             | 120 dpi base         | 300 dots                         | 270 dots           | 225 dots           |
|                         | 240 dpi base         | 600 dots                         | 540 dots           | 450 dots           |
|                         | 180 dpi base         | 450 dots                         | 405 dots           | 337 dots           |
| Characters in a Line    | Font A               | ANK: 33 characters               | ANK: 30 characters | ANK: 25 characters |
|                         | Font B               | ANK: 42 characters               | ANK: 38 characters | ANK: 32 characters |
|                         | Chinese (180/90 dpi) | 16 characters                    | 15 characters      | 12 characters      |
|                         | Chinese (80 dpi)     | 22 characters                    | 20 characters      | 16 characters      |
| Character Size          | Font A               | ANK: 9 dots x 24 dots (W x H)    |                    |                    |
|                         | Font B               | ANK: 7 dots x 24 dots (W x H)    |                    |                    |
|                         | Chinese              | Kanji: 24 dots x 24 dots (W x H) |                    |                    |
| Character Baseline      | Font A               | -                                |                    |                    |
|                         | Font B               | -                                |                    |                    |
|                         | Chinese              | -                                |                    |                    |
| Default Line Feed Space |                      | 12 dots                          |                    |                    |
| Color Specification     |                      | First color                      |                    |                    |
| Page Mode Default Area  |                      | -                                |                    |                    |
| Page Mode Maximum Area  |                      | -                                |                    |                    |
| Barcode                 |                      | Not supported                    |                    |                    |
| Two-Dimensional Code    |                      | Not supported                    |                    |                    |
| Paper Cut               |                      | Cut, No cut                      |                    |                    |
| Drawer Kick-Out         |                      | Supported                        |                    |                    |
| Buzzer                  |                      | Not supported                    |                    |                    |
| Battery                 |                      | Not supported                    |                    |                    |

## Cautions

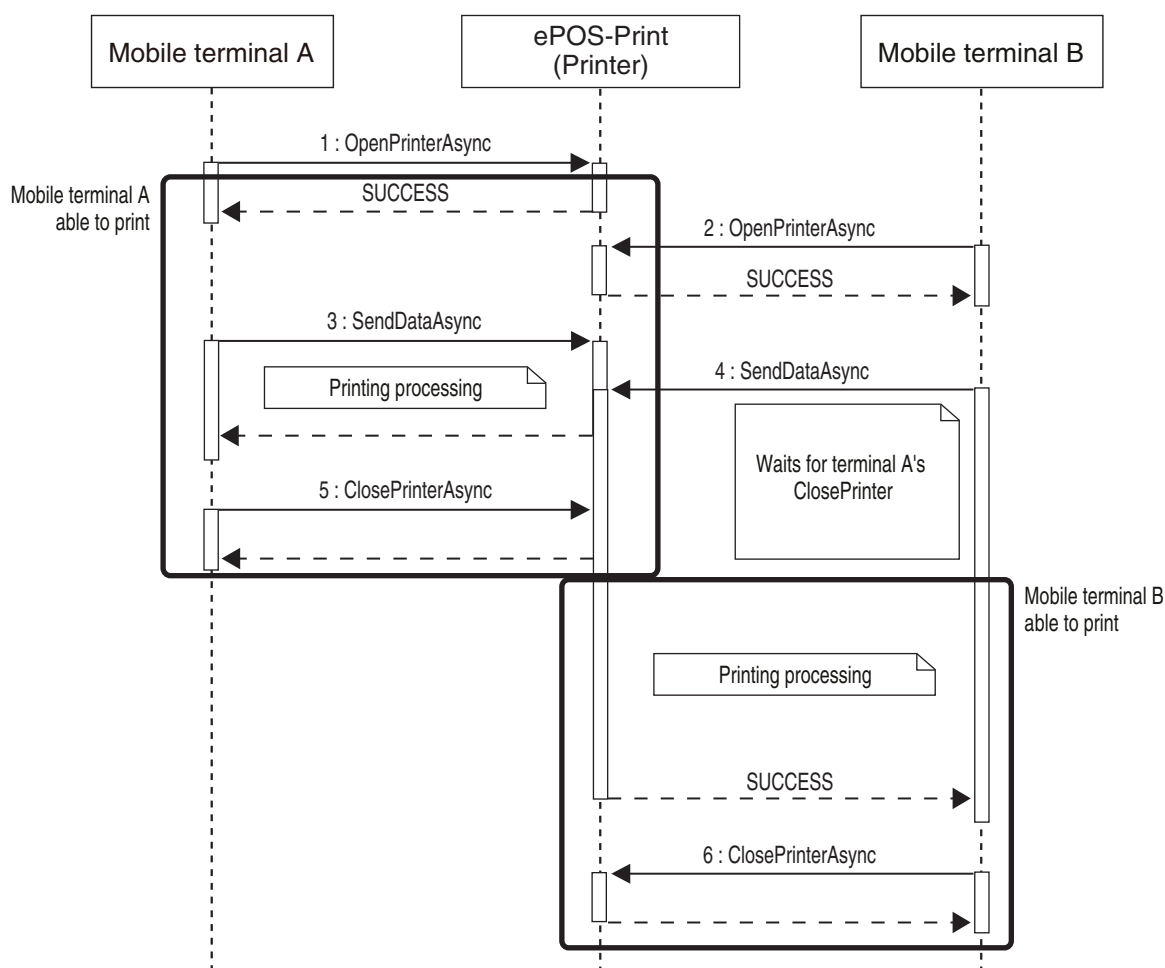
### If you Use the Printer from Multiple Mobile Terminals

If you use the printer from multiple mobile terminals, while you are using a particular terminal it will not be possible to print from the other ones. With Version 1.6.0 and later, if OpenPrinterAsync processing has been initiated on one terminal when the printer is being used by another terminal, the OpenPrinterAsync processing will wait for the other terminal's processing to end.

The chart below shows the flow of processing when a single printer is used from mobile terminal A and mobile terminal B.

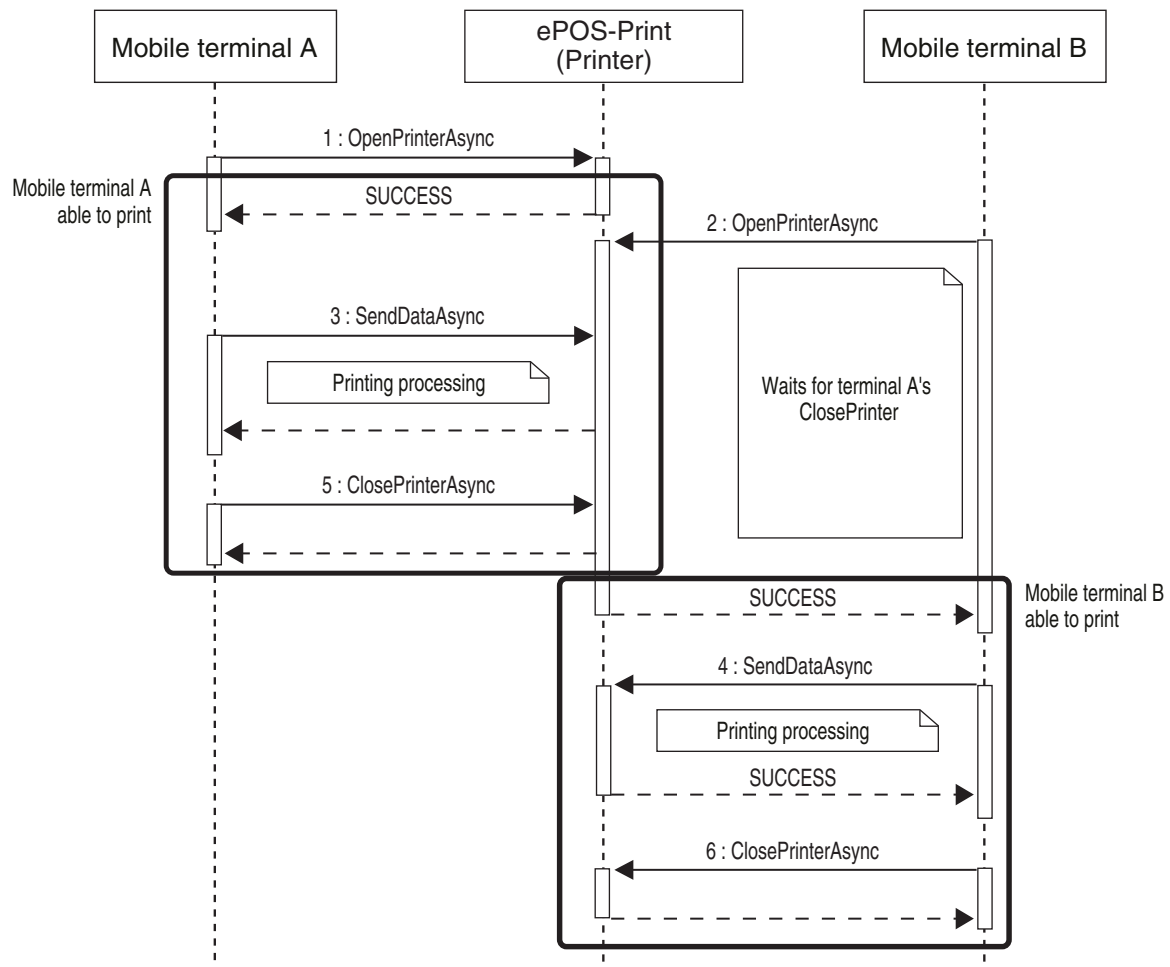
#### Version 1.5.0 and earlier

With Version 1.5.0 and earlier, mobile terminal B will wait for mobile terminal A's ClosePrinterAsync processing to end before executing SendDataAsync processing.



### Version 1.6.0 and later

With Version 1.6.0 and later, mobile terminal B will wait for mobile terminal A's ClosePrinterAsync processing to end before executing OpenPrinterAsync processing.



## To specify a transaction

Put the set of print processing to be carried out consecutively (such as a single receipt or a single coupon) between [BeginTransactionAsync](#) (p.144) and [EndTransactionAsync](#) (p.146).

